

# Minna no Nihongo I

# みんなの 日本語

初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版  
Translation & Grammatical Notes



スリー・エーネットワーク

**Minna no Nihongo I**

**みんなの  
日本語**

**初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版**

**Translation & Grammatical Notes**

**Minna no Nihongo I**

# みんなの 日本語

**初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版**  
Translation & Grammatical Notes



スリーエーネットワーク

© 1998 by 3A Corporation

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the Publisher.

Published by 3A Corporation

Shoei Bldg., 6-3, Sarugaku-cho 2-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 101-0064, Japan

ISBN4-88319-107-9 C0081

First published 1998

Printed in Japan

# FOREWORD

As the title ***Minna no Nihongo*** indicates, this book has been designed to make the study of Japanese as enjoyable and interesting as possible for students and teachers alike. Over three years in the planning and compilation, it stands as a complete textbook in itself while acting as a companion volume to the highly regarded ***Shin Nihongo no Kiso***.

As readers may know, ***Shin Nihongo no Kiso*** is a comprehensive introduction to elementary Japanese that serves as a highly efficient resource enabling students wishing to master basic Japanese conversation to do so in the shortest possible time. As such, although it was originally developed for use by AOTS's technical trainees, it is now used by a wide range of people both in Japan and abroad.

The teaching of Japanese is branching out in many different ways. Japanese economic and industrial growth has led to a greater level of interchange between Japan and other countries, and non-Japanese from a wide variety of backgrounds have come to Japan with a range of different objectives and are now living within local communities here. The changes in the social milieu surrounding the teaching of Japanese that have resulted from this influx of people from other countries have in turn influenced the individual situations in which Japanese is taught. There is now a greater diversity of learning needs, and they require individual responses.

It is against this background, and in response to the opinions and hopes expressed by a large number of people who have been involved in the teaching of Japanese for many years both in Japan and elsewhere, that 3A Corporation proudly publishes ***Minna no Nihongo***. While the book continues to make use of the clarity and ease of understanding provided by the special features, key learning points and learning methods of ***Shin Nihongo no Kiso***, the scenes, situations and characters in ***Minna no Nihongo*** have been made more universal in order to appeal to a wider range of learners. Its contents have been enhanced in this way to allow all kinds of students to use it for studying Japanese with pleasure.

***Minna no Nihongo*** is aimed at anyone who urgently needs to learn to communicate in Japanese in any situation, whether at work, school, college or in their local community. Although it is an introductory text, efforts have been made to make the exchanges between Japanese and foreign characters in the book reflect Japanese

social conditions and everyday life as faithfully as possible. While it is intended principally for those who have already left full-time education, it can also be recommended as an excellent textbook for university entrance courses as well as short-term intensive courses at technical colleges and universities.

We at 3A Corporation are continuing actively to produce new study materials designed to meet the individual needs of an increasingly wide range of learners, and we sincerely hope that readers will continue to give us their valued support.

In conclusion, I should like to mention the extensive help we received in the preparation of this text, in the form of suggestions and comments from various quarters and trials of the materials in actual lessons, for which we are extremely grateful. 3A Corporation intends to continue extending its network of friendship all over the world through activities such as the publishing of Japanese study materials, and we hope that everyone who knows us will continue to lend us their unstinting encouragement and support in this.

Iwao Ogawa

President, 3A Corporation

March 1998

# **EXPLANATORY NOTES**

## **I . Structure**

The learning materials consist of a Main Text, a Translation and Grammar Text and a set of cassette tapes. The Translation and Grammar Text is currently available in English. Versions in other languages will be published shortly.

The materials have been prepared with the main emphasis on listening and speaking Japanese; they do not provide instruction in reading and writing hiragana, katakana or kanji.

## **II . Content and Method of Use**

### **1. Main Text**

#### **1) Japanese Pronunciation**

This section gives examples of the main characteristics of Japanese pronunciation.

#### **2) Classroom instructions, greetings, numerals**

These are useful for understanding classroom instructions and daily greetings. They are frequently used by teachers in class.

#### **3) Lessons**

There are 25 lessons, and each contains the following:

##### **① Sentence Patterns**

Basic sentence patterns are shown in the order they appear.

##### **② Example Sentences**

A small dialogue in the style of a question and answer is given to show how the sentence patterns are used in practical conversation. New adverbs, conjunctions, and other grammatical points are also introduced.

##### **③ Conversation**

In the conversations, various foreign people staying in Japan appear in a variety of situations. The conversations include everyday expressions and greetings. As they are simple, learning them by heart is recommended. If time allows, students should try developing the conversation by applying the reference words given in each lesson of the Translation and Grammar Text in order to maximize their communication skills.

## ④ Drills

The drills are divided into three levels: A, B, and C.

Drill A is visually designed in chart style to help understanding of the grammatical structure. The style helps students to learn systematically the basic sentence patterns through substitution drills, and applying verb forms and conjugations following the chart.

Drill B has various drill patterns to strengthen students' grasp of the basic sentence patterns. Follow the directions given in each practice. Drills marked with a  sign use pictorial charts.

Drill C is given in discourse style to show how the sentence patterns function in actual situations, and to enhance practical oral skills. Do not simply read, repeat and substitute, but try making your own substitution, enrich the content, and develop the story.

## ⑤ Practice

Two kinds of practices are given: one type for listening () and the other for grammar practice.

The listening practice is further divided into a question asking for a personal answer, and a question confirming the key point of the given discourse. The listening practices are designed to strengthen students' aural skills, while the grammar practices check comprehension of vocabulary and the grammar points in the lessons studied.

The reading practices mostly require students to give a true or false response after reading a simple story compiled with words and sentence patterns from the lessons learned.

## ⑥ Review

This is provided to enable students to go over the essential points every several lessons studied.

## ⑦ Summary

At the end of the Main Text, a summary of grammatical points is given, such as the use of the particles, verb forms, adverbs and conjunctions, using example sentences appearing in the respective lessons.

## ⑧ Index

This includes classroom instructions, greetings, numerals, new

vocabulary, and idiomatic expressions introduced in each lesson of the Main Text.

## 2. Translation and Grammar Text

1) Explanations of the general features and pronunciation of Japanese as well as the Japanese writing system

2) Translation of classroom instructions and greetings in the Main Text

3) The following are given in each of the 25 lessons.

- ① new vocabulary and its translation
- ② translation of Sentence Patterns, Example Sentences, and Conversation
- ③ useful words related to the lesson and small pieces of information on Japan and the Japanese
- ④ explanation of essential grammar appearing in the lesson

4) Translation of the particles, how to use the forms, adverbs and adverbial expressions, and various conjugations found at the back of the Main Text

5) Tables showing how to express numbers, time, periods of time, and counters, etc. including items which the textbook does not cover

## 3. Cassette Tapes

On the cassette tapes, Vocabulary, Sentence Patterns, Example Sentences, Drill C, Conversation and listening comprehension questions of the Practice section are recorded.

Students should pay attention to the pronunciation and intonation when listening to the Vocabulary, Sentence Patterns and Example Sentences. When listening to Drill C and Conversation, try to get accustomed to the natural speed of the language.

## 4. Kanji Usage

1) Kanji usage is based on 常用漢字表, which is an official list of the most commonly used Chinese characters in Japan.

- ① 熟字訓 (words which are made by a combination of two or more kanji and have a special reading) shown in the Appendix Chart of 常用漢字表

are written in kanji.

e.g. 友達 ともだち friend 果物 くだもの fruit 眼鏡 めがね glasses

- ② Proper nouns are written with their own Chinese characters even if their readings are non-standard.

e.g. 大阪 おおさか Osaka 奈良 なら Nara 歌舞伎 かぶき Kabuki

- 2) For freeing students from confusion, some words are given in kana although they are included in 常用漢字表 and its Appendix Chart.

e.g. ある (有る possess・在る exist) たぶん (多分) perhaps  
きのう (昨日) yesterday

- 3) Numbers are principally shown in Arabic numerals.

e.g. 9 時 9 o'clock 4 月 1 日 1st April 1 つ one (thing)

However kanji is used in the following cases.

e.g. 一人で by oneself 一度 one time 一万円札 ten thousand yen bill

## 5. Miscellaneous

- 1) Words which can be omitted from a sentence are enclosed in square brackets [ ].

e.g. 父は 54[歳]です。 My father is 54 years old.

- 2) Synonyms are enclosed in round brackets ( ).

e.g. だれ (どなた) who

- 3) The part for an alternative word is denoted by ~.

e.g. ~はいかがですか。 How would you like ~ ?

If the alternative part is a numeral, - is used.

e.g. -歳 - years old - 円 - yen - 時間 - hours

# **TO USERS OF THIS TEXTBOOK**

**The most effective way to study**

## **1. Learn each word carefully.**

The *Translation & Grammatical Notes* introduces the new words for each lesson. First, listen to the tape and learn these words thoroughly, paying special attention to the correct pronunciation and accent. Try to make sentences with the new words. It is important to memorize not only a word itself, but its use in a sentence.

## **2. Practice the sentence patterns.**

Make sure you understand the meaning of each sentence pattern, and do *Drills A* and *B* until you have mastered the pattern. Say the sentences aloud, especially when doing *Drill B*.

## **3. Practice the conversation drills.**

Sentence-pattern practice is followed by conversation practice. The example conversations show the various situations in actual daily life in which people from abroad will often need to use Japanese. Start by doing *Drill C* to get accustomed to the pattern. Don't practice only the dialogue pattern, but try to expand the dialogue. And learn how to communicate suitably according to the situations by practicing the conversation.

## **4. Listen to the cassette tape repeatedly.**

When practicing *Drill C* and *Conversation*, listen to the tape and say the dialogue aloud to make sure you acquire the correct pronunciation and intonation. Listening to the tape is the most effective way to get used to the sound and speed of Japanese and to improve your listening ability.

## **5. Always remember to review and prepare.**

So as not to forget what you have learned in class, always review it the same day. Finally, do the questions at the end of each lesson in order to check what you have learnt and to test your listening comprehension. And, if you have time, look through the words and grammar explanation for the next lesson. Basic preparation is necessary for effective study.

## **6. Use what you have learnt.**

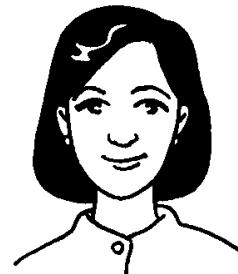
Don't limit your learning to the classroom. Try to talk to Japanese people. Using what you have just learnt is the best way to progress.

If you complete this textbook following the above suggestions, you will have acquired the basic vocabulary and expressions necessary for daily life in Japan.

# CHARACTERS IN THE CONVERSATIONS



**Mike Miller**  
American, employee of IMC



**Sato Keiko**  
Japanese, employee of IMC



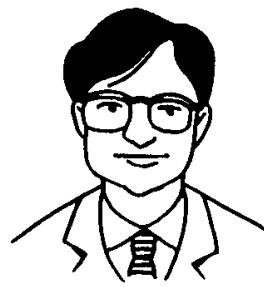
**Jose Santos**  
Brazilian, employee of Brazil Air



**Maria Santos**  
Brazilian, housewife



**Karina**  
Indonesian, student at Fuji University



**Wang Xue**  
Chinese, doctor at Kobe Hospital



**Yamada Ichiro**  
Japanese, employee of IMC



**Yamada Tomoko**  
Japanese, bank clerk



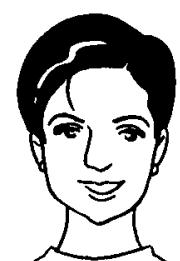
**Matsumoto Tadashi**

Japanese,  
department chief at IMC



**Matsumoto Yoshiko**

Japanese, housewife



**Kimura Izumi**

Japanese, announcer

### —Other Characters—



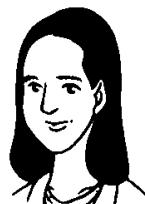
**Watt**

British,  
professor at Sakura University



**Schmidt**

German,  
engineer at Power Electric Company



**Lee**

Korean,  
research worker at AKC



**Teresa**

Brazilian, schoolgirl (9 yrs.),  
daughter of Jose & Maria Santos



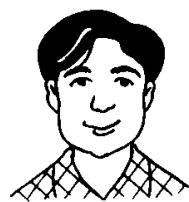
**Taro**

Japanese, schoolboy (8 yrs.),  
son of Ichiro & Tomoko Yamada.



**Gupta**

Indian, employee of IMC



**Thawaphon**

Thai, student at Japanese language school

※IMC (computer software company)

※AKC (アジア研究センター: Asia Research Institute)

# **CONTENTS**

|   |       |    |
|---|-------|----|
| <b>INTRODUCTION</b>                         | ..... | 2  |
| I. General Features of Japanese             |       |    |
| II. Japanese Script                         |       |    |
| III. Pronunciation of Japanese              |       |    |
| <b>PRELIMINARY LESSON</b>                   | ..... | 8  |
| I. Pronunciation                            |       |    |
| II. Classroom Instructions                  |       |    |
| III. Daily Greetings and Expressions        |       |    |
| IV. Numerals                                |       |    |
| <b>TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION</b>           | ..... | 10 |
| <b>ABBREVIATIONS</b>                        | ..... | 11 |
| <b>LESSON 1</b>                             | ..... | 12 |
| I. Vocabulary                               |       |    |
| II. Translation                             |       |    |
| Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences       |       |    |
| Conversation:                               |       |    |
| How do you do?                              |       |    |
| III. Reference Words & Information:         |       |    |
| COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE                  |       |    |
| IV. Grammar Explanation                     |       |    |
| 1. N <sub>1</sub> は N <sub>2</sub> です       |       |    |
| 2. N <sub>1</sub> は N <sub>2</sub> じゃ ありません |       |    |
| 3. Sか                                       |       |    |
| 4. Nも                                       |       |    |
| 5. N <sub>1</sub> の N <sub>2</sub>          |       |    |
| 6. ~さん                                      |       |    |
| <b>LESSON 2</b>                             | ..... | 18 |
| I. Vocabulary                               |       |    |
| II. Translation                             |       |    |
| Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences       |       |    |
| Conversation:                               |       |    |
| This is just a token                        |       |    |
| III. Reference Words & Information:         |       |    |
| FAMILY NAMES                                |       |    |
| IV. Grammar Explanation                     |       |    |
| 1. これ/それ/あれ                                 |       |    |
| 2. この N/その N/あの N                           |       |    |
| 3. そうです/そうじゃ ありません                          |       |    |
| 4. S <sub>1</sub> か、 S <sub>2</sub> か       |       |    |
| 5. N <sub>1</sub> の N <sub>2</sub>          |       |    |
| 6. ですか                                      |       |    |

## **LESSON 3 ..... 24**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

I'll take it

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

DEPARTMENT STORE

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. ここ／そこ／あそこ／こちら／そちら／あちら
2. N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub> (place) です
3. どこ／どちら
4. N<sub>1</sub>の N<sub>2</sub>
5. The こ／そ／あ／ど system of demonstrative words
6. お国

## **LESSON 4 ..... 30**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What are your opening hours?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

PHONE & LETTER

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. 今 - 時 - 分 です
2. V ます
3. V ます／V ません／V ました／V ませんでした
4. N (time) に V
5. N<sub>1</sub> から N<sub>2</sub> まで
6. N<sub>1</sub> と N<sub>2</sub>
7. S れ

## **LESSON 5 ..... 36**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Does this train go to Koshien?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

NATIONAL HOLIDAYS

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. N (place) へ 行きます／来ます／帰ります
2. どこ [へ] も 行きません／行きませんでした
3. N (vehicle) で 行きます／来ます／帰ります
4. N (person/animal) と V
5. いつ
6. S よ

## **LESSON 6 .....42**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Won't you join us?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

FOOD

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. N を V (transitive)
2. N を します
3. 何を しますか
4. なん and なに
5. N (place) で V
6. V ませんか
7. V ましょう
8. お～

## **LESSON 7 .....48**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Hello

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

FAMILY

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. N (tool/means) で V
2. “Word/Sentence”は ～語で  
何ですか
3. N (person) に あげます, etc.
4. N (person) に もらいます, etc.
5. もう V ました

## **LESSON 8 .....54**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

It's almost time to leave

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

COLOR & TASTE

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Adjectives
2. N は な-adj [な] です  
N は い-adj (~い) です
3. な-adj な N  
い-adj (~い) N
4. とても / あまり
5. N は どうですか
6. N<sub>1</sub> は どんな N<sub>2</sub> ですか
7. S<sub>1</sub> が、 S<sub>2</sub>
8. どれ

## **LESSON 9 .....60**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

That's too bad

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

MUSIC, SPORTS & MOVIES

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Nが あります／わかります

Nが 好きです／嫌いです／

上手です／下手です

2. どんな N

3. よく／だいたい／たくさん／少し／  
あまり／全然

4. S<sub>1</sub>から、 S<sub>2</sub>

5. どうして

## **LESSON 10 .....66**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Do you have chili sauce in this store?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

INSIDE THE HOUSE

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Nが あります／います

2. N<sub>1</sub> (place)に N<sub>2</sub>が あります／います

3. N<sub>1</sub> は N<sub>2</sub> (place)に あります／います

4. N<sub>1</sub> (thing/person/place)の N<sub>2</sub> (position)

5. N<sub>1</sub> や N<sub>2</sub>

6. Word (s)ですか

7. チリソースは ありませんか

## **LESSON 11 .....72**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Please send this by sea mail

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

MENU

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Saying numbers

2. Quantifier (period)に 一回 V

3. Quantifierだけ／Nだけ

## **LESSON 12 .....78**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

How was the Festival?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

FESTIVALS & PLACES OF NOTE

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Past tense of noun sentences and  
な-adjective sentences

2. Past tense of い-adjective sentences

3. N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>より adjective です

4. N<sub>1</sub>と N<sub>2</sub>と どちらが adjective ですか  
…N<sub>1</sub>/N<sub>2</sub> の ほうが adjective です

5. N<sub>1</sub> [の中]で 何／どこ／だれ／  
いつが いちばん adjective ですか  
…N<sub>2</sub>が いちばん adjective です

## LESSON 13 .....84

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Charge us separately

### III. Reference Words & Information:

TOWN

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Nが 欲しいです
2. Vます-form たいです
3. N(place)へ  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Vます-form \\ N \end{array} \right\}$  に  
行きます／来ます／帰ります
4. Nに V／Nを V
5. どこか／何か
6. ご注文

## LESSON 14 .....90

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

To Umeda, please

### III. Reference Words & Information:

STATION

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Verb conjugation
2. Verb groups
3. Verb て-form
4. Vて-form ください
5. Vて-form います
6. Vます-form ましょうか
7. S<sub>1</sub>が、 S<sub>2</sub>
8. Nが V

## LESSON 15 .....96

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Tell me about your family

### III. Reference Words & Information:

OCCUPATIONS

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Vて-form も いいです
2. Vて-form は いけません
3. Vて-form います
4. Vて-form います
5. 知りません

## LESSON 16 .....102

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Tell me how to use this machine

### III. Reference Words & Information:

HOW TO WITHDRAW MONEY

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Vて-form、 [Vて-form]、 ~
2. い-adj (~べ) → ~くて、 ~
3. N  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{な-adj} [\text{な}] \\ \text{で} \end{array} \right\}$  で、 ~
4. V<sub>1</sub>て-formから、 V<sub>2</sub>
5. N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>が adjective
6. どうやって
7. どの N

## **LESSON 17.....108**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What seems to be the problem?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

BODY & ILLNESS

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Verb ない-form
2. Vない-form ないで ください
3. Vない-form なければ なりません
4. Vない-form なくても いいです
5. N (object) は
6. N (time) までに V

## **LESSON 18.....114**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What is your hobby?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

ACTIONS

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Verb dictionary form
2. N  
V dictionary form こと } が できます
3. わたしの 趣味は { N  
V dictionary form こと } です
4. V<sub>1</sub> dictionary form  
N の } まえに、 V<sub>2</sub>  
Quantifier (period)
5. なかなか
6. ぜひ

## **LESSON 19.....120**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

As for my diet, I'll start it tomorrow

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

TRADITIONAL CULTURE & ENTERTAINMENT

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Verb た-form
2. Vた-form ことが あります
3. Vた-form り、 Vた-form り します
4. い-adj (~よ) → ~く  
な-adj [な] → に }なります  
Nに
5. そうですね

## **LESSON 20.....126**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What will you do for the summer vacation?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

HOW TO ADDRESS PEOPLE

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. Polite style and plain style
2. Proper use of the polite style or the plain style
3. Conversation in the plain style

## LESSON 21.....132

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

I think so, too

### III. Reference Words & Information:

POSITIONS IN SOCIETY

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. plain form と 思います

2. "S" plain form } と 言います

3. V  
  い-adj plain form }  
  な-adj plain form } でしょう?  
  N      ～だ }

4. N<sub>1</sub> (place)で N<sub>2</sub> が あります

5. N (occasion)で

6. Nでも V

7. Vない-formないと.....

## LESSON 22.....138

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

What kind of apartment would you like?

### III. Reference Words & Information:

CLOTHES

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Noun modification

2. Noun modification by sentences

3. Nが

4. V dictionary form 時間／約束／用事

## LESSON 23.....144

### I. Vocabulary

### II. Translation

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

How can I get there?

### III. Reference Words & Information:

ROAD & TRAFFIC

### IV. Grammar Explanation

1. V dictionary form

  Vない-form  
  い-adj (~い)  
  な-adjな  
  Nの } とき、 ~

2. V dictionary form

  Vた-form } とき、 ~

3. V dictionary form と、 ~

4. Nが adjective/V

5. N (place)を V (verb of movement)

## **LESSON 24.....150**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Will you help me?

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

EXCHANGE OF PRESENTS

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. くれます

2. Vて-form  
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{あげます} \\ \text{もらいます} \\ \text{くれます} \end{array} \right.$

3. N (person)が V

4. Interrogativeが V

## **LESSON 25.....156**

### **I. Vocabulary**

### **II. Translation**

Sentence Patterns & Example Sentences

Conversation:

Thank you for having been kind to me

### **III. Reference Words & Information:**

LIFE

### **IV. Grammar Explanation**

1. plain past form ら、 ~

2. Vた-form ら、 ~

3. Vて-form

い-adj (~X) → ~く て  
 な-adj [な] → で  
 Nで

4. もし and いくら

5. Nが

## **SUMMARY LESSON .....163**

### **I. Particles**

### **II. How to Use the Forms**

### **III. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions**

### **IV. Various Conjunctions**

## **APPENDICES.....172**

### **I. Numerals**

### **II. Expressions of time**

### **III. Expressions of period**

### **IV. Counters**

### **V. Conjugation of verbs**

# INTRODUCTION

## I . General Features of Japanese

### 1. Parts of Speech

The Japanese language is comprised of verbs, adjectives, nouns, adverbs, conjunctions and particles.

### 2. Word Order

A predicate always comes at the end of a sentence. A modifier always comes before the word or phrase to be modified.

### 3. Predicate

There are three types of predicates in Japanese: noun, verb and adjective. A predicate inflects according to whether it is (1) affirmative or negative and (2) non-past or past.

Adjectives are divided into two types according to their type of inflection.

They are called **い**-adjectives and **な**-adjectives.

In Japanese, words do not inflect for person, gender or number.

### 4. Particle

A particle is used to show the grammatical relation between words, to show the speaker's intention or to connect sentences.

### 5. Omission

Words or phrases are often omitted if they are understood from the context.

Even the subject and object of a sentence are often omitted.

## II . Japanese Script

There are three kinds of letters in Japanese: hiragana, katakana and kanji (Chinese characters). Hiragana and katakana are phonetic representations of sounds, and each letter basically corresponds to one mora (a unit of sound. See III). Kanji convey meanings as well as sounds.

In Japanese script, all three types of letters are used together. Katakana are used to write foreign names and loan words. 1945 kanji letters are fixed as essential for daily use. Hiragana are used to write particles, the inflectable parts of words, etc. Other than these three types of letters, romaji (Roman letters) are sometimes used for the convenience of foreigners. You may see romaji at stations and on signboards. Below are examples of all four types of script.

田中 さん は ミラー さん と デパート へ 行 きます。  
○ □ □ △ □ □ △ □ ○ □

Mr. Tanaka is going to the department store with Mr. Miller.

大阪 O s a k a  
○ ☆  
(○ – kanji    □ – hiragana    △ – katakana    ☆ – romaji)

### III. Pronunciation of Japanese

#### 1. Kana and Mora

|       | あ-line   | い-line      | う-line      | え-line      | お-line   |
|-------|----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------|
| あ-row | あア<br>a  | いイ<br>i     | うウ<br>u     | えエ<br>e     | おオ<br>o  |
| か-row | かカ<br>ka | きキ<br>ki    | くク<br>ku    | けケ<br>ke    | こコ<br>ko |
| さ-row | さサ<br>sa | しシ<br>shi   | すス<br>su    | せセ<br>se    | そソ<br>so |
| た-row | たタ<br>ta | ちチ<br>chi   | つツ<br>tsu   | てテ<br>te    | とト<br>to |
| な-row | なナ<br>na | にニ<br>ni    | ぬヌ<br>nu    | ねネ<br>ne    | のノ<br>no |
| は-row | はハ<br>ha | ひヒ<br>hi    | ふフ<br>fu    | へヘ<br>he    | ほホ<br>ho |
| ま-row | まマ<br>ma | みミ<br>mi    | むム<br>mu    | めメ<br>me    | もモ<br>mo |
| や-row | やヤ<br>ya | (いイ)<br>(i) | ゆユ<br>yu    | (えエ)<br>(e) | よヨ<br>yo |
| ら-row | らラ<br>ra | りリ<br>ri    | るル<br>ru    | れレ<br>re    | ろロ<br>ro |
| わ-row | わワ<br>wa | (いイ)<br>(i) | (うウ)<br>(u) | (えエ)<br>(e) | をヲ<br>o  |
|       | んン<br>n  |             |             |             |          |

e.g.,

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| あア<br>a | hiragana script<br>katakana script<br>the Roman alphabet |
|---------|--|

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| きヤ キヤ<br>kya | きゅ キュ<br>kyu | きょ キョ<br>kyo |
| しゃ シャ<br>sha | しゅ シュ<br>shu | しょ ショ<br>sho |
| ちゃ チャ<br>cha | ちゅ チュ<br>chu | ちょ チョ<br>cho |
| にや ニヤ<br>nya | にゅ ニュ<br>nyu | にょ ニョ<br>nyo |
| ひや ヒヤ<br>hya | ひゅ ヒュ<br>hyu | ひょ ヒョ<br>hyo |
| みや ミヤ<br>mya | みゅ ミュ<br>myu | みょ ミョ<br>myo |

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| りヤ リヤ<br>rya | りゅ リュ<br>ryu | りょ リョ<br>ryo |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|

3

|       |          |          |          |          |          |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| が-row | がガ<br>ga | ぎギ<br>gi | ぐグ<br>gu | げゲ<br>ge | ごゴ<br>go |
| ざ-row | ざザ<br>za | じジ<br>ji | ずズ<br>zu | ぜゼ<br>ze | ぞゾ<br>zo |
| だ-row | だダ<br>da | ぢヂ<br>ji | づヅ<br>zu | でデ<br>de | どド<br>do |
| ば-row | ばバ<br>ba | びビ<br>bi | ぶブ<br>bu | べベ<br>be | ぼボ<br>bo |
| ぱ-row | ぱパ<br>pa | ぴピ<br>pi | ぷプ<br>pu | ペペ<br>pe | ぽポ<br>po |

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| ぎヤ ギヤ<br>gya | ぎゅ ギュ<br>gyu | ぎょ ギョ<br>gyo |
| じゃ ジャ<br>ja  | じゅ ジュ<br>ju  | じょ ジョ<br>jo  |

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| びヤ ビヤ<br>bya | びゅ ビュ<br>byu | びょ ビョ<br>byo |
| ぴヤ ピヤ<br>pya | ぴゅ ピュ<br>pyu | ぴょ ピョ<br>pyo |

The katakana letters in the square on the right are not in the above table. They are used to write sounds which are not original Japanese sounds but are needed for use in loan words.

|        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|
| ウイ wi  | ウェ we  | ウォ wo  |
| ツア tsa | シェ she |        |
| フア fa  | チエ che |        |
| ティ ti  | ツエ tse | ツオ tso |
| フィ fi  | フエ fe  | フオ fo  |
| デイ di  | ジエ je  |        |
| ドウ du  |        |        |
| デュ dyu |        |        |

The Japanese language is based on five vowel sounds: あ (a), い (i), う (u), え (e) and お (o) (see the table on the previous page). All spoken sounds are derived from these five vowels. They are used alone or are attached to either a consonant (e.g., k + a = か) or a consonant plus the semi-vowel “y” (e.g., k + y + a = きや). The exception to this is a special mora, ん (n), which is not followed by vowels. All of these sounds are of equal length when spoken.

[Note 1] A mora is a unit of sound in Japanese.

[Note 2] In order to write the Japanese language according to the pronunciation, kana are used. (See “Kana and Mora” on the previous page.) One kana letter or one kana letter accompanied by a small kana letter (e.g., きや) basically corresponds to one mora.

## 2. Long Vowels

A long vowel is pronounced twice as long as the ordinary vowels あ, い, う, え and お. If you count the length of the vowel あ as one, the length of the long vowel ああ is counted as two. This means あ is one mora long, whereas ああ is two moras long.

Whether a vowel is long or not can change the meaning of the word.

e.g., おばさん (aunt) : おばあさん (grandmother)

おじさん (uncle): おじいさん (grandfather)

ゆき (snow): ゆうき (courage)

え (picture): ええ (yes) とる (take): とおる (pass)

ここ (here): こうこう (high school) へや (room): へいや (plain)

カ二ド (card) タクシ一 (taxi) ス二パ一 (supermarket)

テーブ (tape) ノート (notebook)

[Note]

### 1) How to write the long vowels in hiragana

#### (1) The long vowels of the あ-line

Add あ to the hiragana letters belonging to the あ-line.

#### (2) The long vowels of the い-line

Add い to the hiragana letters belonging to the い-line.

#### (3) The long vowels of the う-line

Add う to the hiragana letters belonging to the う-line.

#### (4) The long vowels of the え-line

Add え to the hiragana letters belonging to the え-line.

(exceptions: ええ yes, ねえ say, おねえさん elder sister)

#### (5) The long vowels of the お-line

Add う to the hiragana letters belonging to the お-line.

(exceptions: おおきい big, おおい many, とおい far, and some others)

## 2) How to write the long vowels in katakana

For all the lines, add “—.”

## 3. Pronunciation of ん

ん never appears at the beginning of a word. It constitutes one mora. For easier pronunciation, the way it is said changes according to the sound that comes after it.

- 1) It is pronounced /n/ before the sounds in the タ-, ダ-, ら- and ナ-rows.

e.g., はんたい (opposite) うんどう (sport) せんろ (rail) みんな (all)

- 2) It is pronounced /m/ before the sounds in the バ-, ポ- and マ-rows.

e.g., しんぶん (newspaper) えんぴつ (pencil) うんめい (destiny)

- 3) It is pronounced /ŋ/ before the sounds in the カ- and ガ-rows.

e.g., てんき (weather) けんがく (visit)

## 4. Pronunciation of っ

っ appears before a sound belonging to either the カ-, サ-, タ- or ポ-row. In writing loan words, it is also used before sounds belonging to the チ-row, デ-row, etc. It constitutes one mora and has one mora's length.

e.g., ぶか (subordinate) : ぶっか (commodity price)

かさい (fire) : かっさい (applause)

おと (sound) : おっと (husband)

にっき (diary) ざっし (magazine) きって (stamp)

いっぱい (a cup of~) コップ (glass) ベッド (bed)

5

## 5. Pronunciation of Letters Combined with や, ウ or よ

き, ぎ, し, じ, ち, に, ひ, び, び, み or り can combine with や, ウ or よ, and the two letters together constitute one mora.

e.g., ひやく (jump) : ひゃく (hundred)

じゅう (freedom) : じゅう (ten)

びょういん (beauty parlor) : びょういん (hospital)

シャツ (shirt) おちゃ (tea) ぎゅうにゅう (milk)

きょう (today) ぶちょう (department chief) りょこう (travel)

## 6. Pronunciation of the ガ-row

The consonant of this row, when it comes at the beginning of a word, is pronounced [g]. In other cases, it is usually pronounced [ŋ]. Recently some Japanese do not differentiate between [g] and [ŋ], and always use [g].

## 7. Devoicing of Vowels [i] and [u]

The vowels [i] and [u] are devoiced and not heard when they come between voiceless consonants. The vowel [u] of す[su] in ~です or ~ます is also devoiced when the sentence finishes with either ~です or ~ます.

e.g., すき (like) したいです (want to do) ききます (listen)

## 8. Accent

The Japanese language has pitch accent. That is, some moras in a word are pronounced high and others low. The words are divided into two types according to whether a word has a falling pitch or not. Words with a falling pitch are subdivided into three types according to where the fall in pitch occurs. The standard Japanese accent is characterized by the fact that the first and the second moras have different pitches, and that the pitch never rises again once it has fallen.

### [Types of Accent]

- 1) A fall in pitch does not occur. [ ]

e.g., にわ (garden) はな (nose) なまえ (name) にほんご (Japanese language)

- 2) A fall in pitch comes after the first mora. [ ]

e.g., ほん (book) てんき (weather) らいげつ (next month)

- 3) A fall in pitch comes in the word at some place after the second mora. [ ]

e.g., たまご (egg) ひこうき (airplane) せんせい (teacher)

- 4) A fall in pitch comes after the last mora. [ ]

e.g., くつ (shoes) はな (flower) やすみ (holiday) おとうと (younger brother)

“はな (nose)” in 1) and “はな (flower)” in 4) are alike, but the type of accent is different, because if a particle like ガ is added after each word 1) is pronounced はなが, whereas 4) is pronounced はなが. The following are some other examples of words whose meaning differ according to the type of accent.

e.g., はし (bridge) : はし (chopsticks) いち (one) : いち (location)

There are local differences in accent. For example, the accent of the area around Osaka is quite different from the standard one. The following are examples.

e.g., Tokyo accent : Osaka accent

(standard Japanese accent)

|             |   |             |          |
|-------------|---|-------------|----------|
| <u>はな</u>   | : | <u>はな</u>   | (flower) |
| <u>りんご</u>  | : | <u>りんご</u>  | (apple)  |
| <u>おんがく</u> | : | <u>おんがく</u> | (music)  |

## 9. Intonation

There are three patterns. They are 1) flat, 2) rising and 3) falling. Questions are pronounced with a rising intonation. Other sentences are usually pronounced flat, but sometimes with a falling intonation. A falling intonation can express feelings such as agreement or disappointment, etc.

e.g., 佐藤 : あした 友達と お花見を します。【→ flat】

ミラーさんも いっしょに 行きませんか。【↗ rising】

ミラー : ああ、いいですねえ。【↘ falling】

Sato : I'll go to see the cherry blossoms with my friends tomorrow.

Won't you come with us, Mr. Miller?

Miller : Oh, that sounds good.

# PRELIMINARY LESSON

## I. Pronunciation

### 1. Kana and Mora

### 2. Long Vowels

おばさん (aunt) : おばあさん (grandmother)

おじさん (uncle) : おじいさん (grandfather)

ゆき (snow) : ゆうき (courage)

え (picture) : ええ (yes)

とる (take) : とおる (pass)

ここ (here) : こうこう (high school) へや (room) : へいや (plain)

カード (card) タクシー (taxi) スーパー (supermarket)

テープ (tape) ノート (notebook)

### 3. Pronunciation of ん

えんぴつ (pencil) みんな (all) てんき (weather) きんえん (no smoking)

### 4. Pronunciation of っ

ぶか (subordinate) : ぶっか (commodity price)

かさい (fire) : かっさい (applause)

おと (sound) : おっと (husband)

にっき (diary) ザっし (magazine) きって (stamp)

いっぱい (a cup of ~) コップ (glass) ベッド (bed)

### 5. Pronunciation of Letters Combined with ゃ, オ or ょ

ひやく (jump) : ひやく (hundred)

じゅう (freedom) : じゅう (ten)

びょういん (beauty parlor) : びょういん (hospital)

シャツ (shirt) おちゃ (tea) ぎゅうにゅう (milk)

きょう (today) ぶちょう (department chief) りょこう (travel)

### 6. Accent

にわ (garden) なまえ (name) にほんご (Japanese language) [ ]

ほん (book) てんき (weather) らいげつ (next month) [ ]

たまご (egg) ひこうき (airplane) せんせい (teacher) [ ]

くつ (shoes) やすみ (holiday) おとうと (younger brother) [ ]

はし (bridge) : はし (chopsticks) いち (one) : いち (location)

Tokyo accent : Osaka accent

はな : はな (flower)

りんご : りんご (apple)

おんがく : おんがく (music)

## 7. Intonation

- e.g., 佐藤 : あした友達とお花見をします。【→】  
ミラーさんもいっしょに行きませんか。【↗】  
ミラー : ああ、いいですねえ。【↓】  
Sato : I'll go to see the cherry blossoms with my friends tomorrow.  
Won't you come with us, Mr. Miller?  
Miller : Oh, that sounds good.

## II. Classroom Instructions

1. Let's begin.
2. Let's finish (the lesson).
3. Let's take a break.
4. Do you understand? (Yes, I do./No, I don't.)
5. Once more.
6. Fine. / Good.
7. That's not OK. / That's wrong.
8. name
9. exam, homework
10. question, answer, example

## III. Daily Greetings and Expressions

1. Good morning.
2. Good afternoon.
3. Good evening.
4. Good night.
5. Good-bye.
6. Thank you very much.
7. Excuse me. / I'm sorry.
8. Please.

9

## IV. Numerals

- 0 zero
- 1 one
- 2 two
- 3 three
- 4 four
- 5 five
- 6 six
- 7 seven
- 8 eight
- 9 nine
- 10 ten

# TERMS USED FOR INSTRUCTION

第一課  
文型  
例文  
会話  
練習  
問題  
答え  
読み物  
復習

目次

索引

文法文

単語 (語)

句節

発音  
母音  
子音  
拍

アクセント

イントネーション

[か]行  
[い]列

丁寧体  
普通体  
活用  
フォーム  
～形  
修飾  
例外

|                  |      |                                  |
|------------------|------|----------------------------------|
| lesson -         | 名詞   | noun                             |
| sentence pattern | 動詞   | verb                             |
| example sentence | 形容詞  | adjective                        |
| conversation     | い形容詞 | い-adjective                      |
| practice         | な形容詞 | な-adjective                      |
| exercise         | 助詞   | particle                         |
| answer           | 副詞   | adverb                           |
| reading practice | 接続詞  | conjunction                      |
| review           | 数詞   | quantifier                       |
|                  | 助数詞  | counters                         |
| contents         | 疑問詞  | interrogative<br>(question word) |

|          |      |                                   |
|----------|------|-----------------------------------|
| index    | 名詞文  | noun (predicate) sentence         |
| grammar  | 動詞文  | verb (predicate) sentence         |
| sentence | 形容詞文 | adjective (predicate)<br>sentence |

|               |     |              |
|---------------|-----|--------------|
| word          | 主語  | subject      |
| phrase        | 述語  | predicate    |
| clause        | 目的語 | object       |
|               | 主題  | topic        |
| pronunciation | 肯定  | affirmative  |
| vowel         | 否定  | negative     |
| consonant     | 完了  | perfective   |
| mora          | 未完了 | imperfective |
| accent        | 過去  | past         |
| intonation    | 非過去 | non-past     |

|         |                        |
|---------|------------------------|
| [か]row  | polite style of speech |
| [い]line | plain style of speech  |
|         | inflection             |
|         | form                   |
|         | ～form                  |
|         | modification           |
|         | exception              |

# ABBREVIATIONS

N noun (名詞)

e.g. がくせい つくえ  
student desk

i-adj i-adjective (い形容詞)

e.g. おいしい たかい  
tasty high

n-adj n-adjective (な形容詞)

e.g. きれい[な] しずか[な]  
beautiful quiet

V verb (動詞)

e.g. かきます たべます  
write eat

S sentence (文)

e.g. これは 本です。

This is a book.

わたしは あした 東京へ 行きます。

I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.

# Lesson 1

## I. Vocabulary

|                |              |  |
|----------------|--------------|--|
| わたし            |              | I  |
| わたしたち          |              | we   |
| あなた            |              | you  |
| あのひと<br>(ののかた) | あの人<br>(のの方) | that person, he, she<br>(ののかた is the polite equivalent of あのひと)    |
| みなさん           | 皆さん          | ladies and gentlemen, all of you                                   |
| ～さん            |              | Mr., Ms. (title of respect added to a name)                        |
| ～ちゃん           |              | (suffix often added to a child's name instead of ～さん)              |
| ～くん            | ～君           | (suffix often added to a boy's name)                               |
| ～じん            | ～人           | (suffix meaning "a national of"; e.g., アメリカじん, an American)        |
| せんせい           | 先生           | teacher, instructor (not used when referring to one's own job)     |
| きょうし           | 教師           | teacher, instructor  |
| がくせい           | 学生           | student  |
| かいしゃいん         | 会社員          | company employee   |
| しゃいん           | 社員           | employee of ~ Company (used with a company's name; e.g., IMCのしゃいん) |
| ぎんこういん         | 銀行員          | bank employee  |
| いしゃ            | 医者           | medical doctor   |
| けんきゅうしゃ        | 研究者          | researcher, scholar  |
| エンジニア          |              | engineer   |
| だいがく           | 大学           | university   |
| びょういん          | 病院           | hospital   |
| でんき            | 電気           | electricity, light   |
| だれ (どなた)       |              | who (どなた is the polite equivalent of だれ)                           |

|                       |          |  |
|-----------------------|----------|--|
| -さい<br>なんさい<br>(おいくつ) | -歳<br>何歳 | - years old<br>how old (おいくつ is the polite equivalent of なんさい) |
|-----------------------|----------|--|

|     |     |
|-----|-----|
| はい  | yes |
| いいえ | no  |

|                              |                          |  |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| しつれいですが<br>おなまえは?<br>はじめまして。 | 失礼ですが<br>お名前は?<br>初めまして。 | Excuse me, but<br>May I have your name?<br>How do you do? (lit. I am meeting you for the first time. Usually used as the first phrase when introducing oneself.) |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|--|

どうぞ よろしく [おねがいします]。Pleased to meet you. (lit. Please be nice  
 どうぞ よろしく [お願ひします]。to me. Usually used at the end of a self-introduction.)

こちらは ~さんです。  
 ~から きました。  
 ~から 来ました。

This is Mr./Ms.~.  
 I came (come) from ~.



|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| アメリカ              | U.S.A.  |
| イギリス              | U.K.  |
| インド               | India   |
| インドネシア            | Indonesia   |
| 韓国                | South Korea   |
| タイ                | Thailand  |
| 中国                | China   |
| ドイツ               | Germany   |
| 日本                | Japan   |
| フランス              | France  |
| ブラジル              | Brazil  |
| さくら大学／富士大学        | fictitious universities   |
| IMC／パワー電気／ブラジルエアー | fictitious companies<br>fictitious institute<br>fictitious hospital |
| A K C             |   |
| 神戸病院              |   |

## **II. Translation**

### **Sentence Patterns**

1. I am Mike Miller.
2. Mr. Santos is not a student.
3. Is Mr. Miller a company employee?
4. Mr. Santos is also a company employee.

1

### **Example Sentences**

1. Are you Mr. Mike Miller?  
…Yes, I am Mike Miller.
2. Are you a student, Mr. Miller?  
…No, I am not a student.  
I am a company employee.
3. Is Mr. Wang an engineer?  
…No, Mr. Wang is not an engineer.  
He is a doctor.
4. Who is that person?  
…He is Professor Watt. He is a teacher at Sakura University.
5. How old is Teresa?  
…She is nine years old.

14

### **Conversation**

#### **How do you do?**

- Sato: Good morning.
- Yamada: Good morning.
- Miller: Ms. Sato, this is Mr. Mike Miller.
- Miller: How do you do? I am Mike Miller.
- Miller: I am from the United States of America.
- Miller: Nice to meet you.
- Sato: I am Sato Keiko.
- Sato: Nice to meet you.

### III. Reference Words & Information

くに　ひと  
国・人・ことば

COUNTRY, PEOPLE & LANGUAGE

1

| くに<br>国 Country        | ひと<br>People | ことば<br>Language                |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| アメリカ (U.S.A.)          | アメリカ人        | 英語 (English)                   |
| イギリス (U.K.)            | イギリス人        | 英語 (English)                   |
| イタリア (Italy)           | イタリア人        | イタリア語 (Italian)                |
| イラン (Iran)             | イラン人         | ペルシア語 (Persian)                |
| インド (India)            | インド人         | ヒンディー語 (Hindi)                 |
| インドネシア (Indonesia)     | インドネシア人      | インドネシア語 (Indonesian)           |
| エジプト (Egypt)           | エジプト人        | アラビア語 (Arabic)                 |
| オーストラリア (Australia)    | オーストラリア人     | 英語 (English)                   |
| カナダ (Canada)           | カナダ人         | 英語 (English)<br>フランス語 (French) |
| 韓国 (South Korea)       | 韓国人          | 韓国語 (Korean)                   |
| サウジアラビア (Saudi Arabia) | サウジアラビア人     | アラビア語 (Arabic)                 |
| シンガポール (Singapore)     | シンガポール人      | 英語 (English)                   |
| スペイン (Spain)           | スペイン人        | スペイン語 (Spanish)                |
| タイ (Thailand)          | タイ人          | タイ語 (Thai)                     |
| 中国 (China)             | 中国人          | 中国語 (Chinese)                  |
| ドイツ (Germany)          | ドイツ人         | ドイツ語 (German)                  |
| 日本 (Japan)             | 日本人          | 日本語 (Japanese)                 |
| フランス (France)          | フランス人        | フランス語 (French)                 |
| フィリピン (Philippines)    | フィリピン人       | フィリピノ語 (Filipino)              |
| ブラジル (Brazil)          | ブラジル人        | ポルトガル語 (Portuguese)            |
| ベトナム (Vietnam)         | ベトナム人        | ベトナム語 (Vietnamese)             |
| マレーシア (Malaysia)       | マレーシア人       | マレーシア語 (Malaysian)             |
| メキシコ (Mexico)          | メキシコ人        | スペイン語 (Spanish)                |
| ロシア (Russia)           | ロシア人         | ロシア語 (Russian)                 |

15

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. **N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>です**

#### 1) Particle は

The particle は indicates that the word before it is the topic of the sentence. You select a noun you want to talk about, add は to show that it is the topic and give a statement about the topic.

① わたしは マイク・ミラーです。

I am Mike Miller.

[Note] The particle は is read わ.

#### 2) です

Nouns used with です work as predicates.

です indicates judgement or assertion.

です also conveys that the speaker is being polite towards the listener.

です inflects when the sentence is negative (see 2. below) or in the past tense (see Lesson 12).

② わたしは エンジニアです。

I am an engineer.

### 2. **N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>じゃありません**

じゃ ありません is the negative form of です. It is the form used in daily conversation. For a formal speech or writing, では ありません is used instead.

③ サントスさんは 学生じゃ ありません。 Mr. Santos is not a student.  
(では)

[Note] は in では is read わ.

### 3. **Sか**

#### 1) Particle か

The particle か is used to express the speaker's doubt, question, uncertainty, etc. A question is formed by simply adding か to the end of the sentence. A question ends with a rising intonation.

#### 2) Questions asking whether a statement is correct or not

As mentioned above, a sentence becomes a question when か is added to the end. The word order does not change. The question thus made asks whether a statement is correct or not. Depending on whether you agree with the statement or not, your answer to such a question begins with はい or いいえ.

④ ミラーさんは アメリカ人ですか。

Is Mr. Miller an American?

…はい、 アメリカ人です。

…Yes, he is.

⑤ ミラーさんは 先生ですか。

Is Mr. Miller a teacher?

…いいえ、 先生じゃ ありません。

…No, he is not.

#### 3) Questions with interrogatives

An interrogative replaces the part of the sentence that covers what you want to ask about. The word order does not change, and か is added at the end.

⑥ あの 方は どなたですか。

Who is that man?

… [あの 方は] ミラーさんです。

…That's Mr. Miller.

## 4. **Nも**

も is added after a topic instead of は when the statement about the topic is the same as the previous topic.

- ⑦ ミラーさんは 会社員です。 Mr. Miller is a company employee.  
グプタさんも 会社員です。 Mr. Gupta is also a company employee.

## 5. **N<sub>1</sub> の N<sub>2</sub>**

の is used to connect two nouns. N<sub>1</sub> modifies N<sub>2</sub>. In Lesson 1, N<sub>1</sub> is an organization or some kind of group to which N<sub>2</sub> belongs.

- ⑧ ミラーさんは IMC の 社員です。 Mr. Miller is an IMC employee.

## 6. ~さん

さん is added to the name of the listener or a third person to show the speaker's respect to the person. It should never be used with the speaker's own name.

- ⑨ あの 方は ミラーさんです。 That's Mr. Miller.

When referring directly to the listener, the word あなた (you) is not commonly used if you know the listener's name. The listener's family name followed by さん is usually used.

- ⑩ 鈴木： ミラーさんは 学生ですか  
ミラー： いいえ、会社員です。

Suzuki : Are you a student?

Miller : No, I'm a company employee.



# Lesson 2

## I. Vocabulary

これ  
それ  
あれ

this (thing here)  
that (thing near you)  
that (thing over there)

この～  
その～  
あの～

this ~, this ~ here  
that ~, that ~ near you  
that ~, that ~ over there

ほん  
じしょ  
ざっし  
しんぶん  
ノート  
てちょう  
めいし  
カード  
テレホンカード

本  
辞書  
雑誌  
新聞  
notebook  
pocket notebook  
business card  
card  
telephone card

えんぴつ  
ボールペン  
シャープペンシル

pencil  
ballpoint pen  
mechanical pencil, propelling pencil

かぎ  
とけい  
かさ  
かばん

key  
watch, clock  
umbrella  
bag, briefcase

[カセット] テープ  
テープレコーダー<sup>ー</sup>  
テレビ  
ラジオ  
カメラ  
コンピューター  
じどうしゃ

自動車

[cassette] tape  
tape recorder  
television  
radio  
camera  
computer  
automobile, car

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| つくえ<br>いす   | 机   | desk<br>chair  |
| チョコレート<br>コーヒー  |   | chocolate<br>coffee  |
| えいご<br>にほんご<br>～ご   | 英語<br>日本語<br>～語   | the English language<br>the Japanese language<br>～ language  |
| なん  | 何   | what   |
| そう  |   | so   |
| ちがいます。<br>そうですか。<br>あのう<br>ほんのきもちです。<br>ほんの気持ちです。<br>どうぞ。 | 違います。<br>I see./Is that so?<br>well (used to show hesitation)<br>It's nothing./It's a token of my gratitude.<br>Please./Here you are. (used when offering someone something)<br>Well, thanks. | No, it isn't./You are wrong.<br>I see./Is that so?<br>well (used to show hesitation)<br>It's nothing./It's a token of my gratitude.<br>Please./Here you are. (used when offering someone something)<br>Well, thanks. |
| [どうも] ありがとう [ござります]。Thank you [very much].                |   |  |

## ◀会話▶

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| これから お世話になります。<br>こちらこそ よろしく。 | I hope for your kind assistance hereafter.<br>I am pleased to meet you. (response to どうぞよろしく) |
|-------------------------------|---|

## II. Translation

2

### Sentence Patterns

1. This is a dictionary.
2. This is a book on computers.
3. That is my umbrella.
4. This umbrella is mine.

### Example Sentences

1. Is this a telephone card?  
…Yes, it is.
2. Is that a notebook?  
…No, it's not. It's a pocket notebook.
3. What is that?  
…This is a business card.
4. Is this a “9” or a “7”?  
…It's a “9.”
5. What is that magazine about?  
…It's a magazine on cars.
6. Whose bag is that?  
…It's Ms. Sato's bag.
7. Is this umbrella yours?  
…No, it's not mine.
8. Whose is this key?  
…It's mine.

### Conversation

#### This is just a token

- Yamada: Yes. Who is it?
- Santos: I am Santos from (apartment) 408.
- 
- Santos: Hello. I am Santos.  
How do you do?  
It is nice to meet you.
- Yamada: The pleasure's mine.
- Santos: Er, this is a little something...
- Yamada: Oh, thank you. What is it?
- Santos: It's coffee. Please.
- Yamada: Thank you very much.

### III. Reference Words & Information

名前  
なまえ

### FAMILY NAMES

#### Most Common Family Names

|    |            |    |            |    |            |    |            |
|----|------------|----|------------|----|------------|----|------------|
| 1  | 佐藤<br>さとう  | 2  | 鈴木<br>すずき  | 3  | 高橋<br>たかはし | 4  | 田中<br>たなか  |
| 5  | 渡辺<br>わたなべ | 6  | 伊藤<br>いとう  | 7  | 中村<br>なかむら | 8  | 山本<br>やまもと |
| 9  | 小林<br>こばやし | 10 | 斎藤<br>さいとう | 11 | 加藤<br>かとう  | 12 | 吉田<br>よしだ  |
| 13 | 山田<br>やまだ  | 14 | 佐々木<br>ささき | 15 | 松本<br>まつもと | 16 | 山口<br>やまぐち |
| 17 | 木村<br>きむら  | 18 | 井上<br>いのうえ | 19 | 阿部<br>あべ   | 20 | 林<br>はやし   |

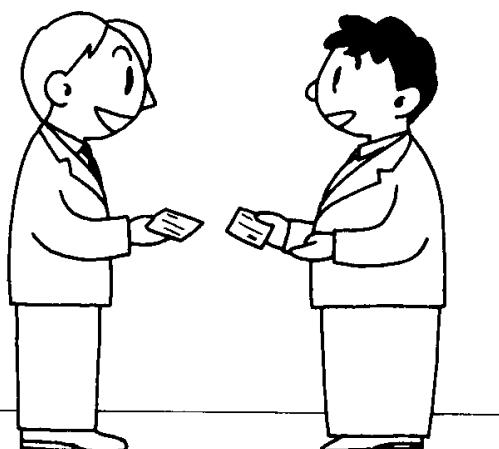
2



#### Greetings

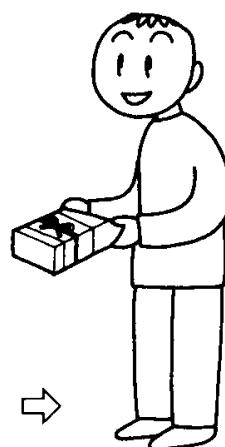
21

はじめまして。



⇒ When people meet for the first time on business, business cards are exchanged.

ほんの 気持ちです。



When you move house, it is polite to introduce yourself to your new neighbours and give them a small gift, such as a towel, soap or sweets.



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. これ／それ／あれ

これ, それ and あれ are demonstratives.

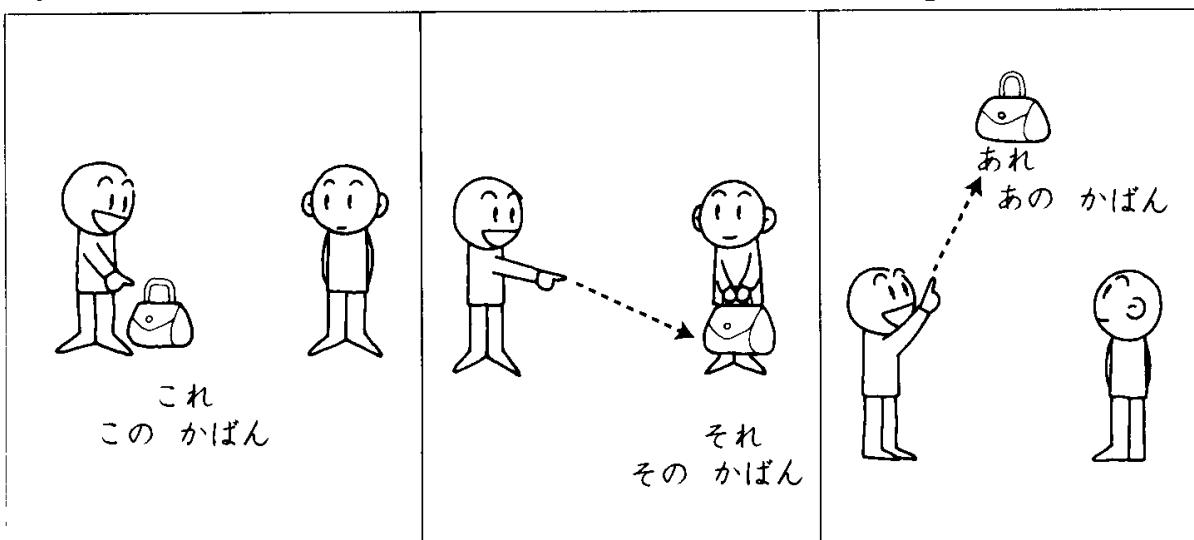
They work as nouns. これ refers to a thing near the speaker. それ refers to a thing near the listener. あれ refers to a thing far from the speaker and the listener.

- 2
- ① それは 辞書ですか。 Is that a dictionary?
  - ② これを ください。 I'll take this. (lit. Please give this to me.) (L. 3)

### 2. この N／その N／あの N

この, その and あの modify nouns. “この N” refers to a thing or a person near the speaker. “その N” refers to a thing or a person near the listener. “あの N” refers to a thing or a person far from both the speaker and the listener.

- ③ この 本は わたしのです。 This book is mine.
- ④ あの 方は どなたですか。 Who is that [person]?



### 3. そうです／そうじゃ ありません

In the case of a noun sentence, the word そう is often used to answer a question requiring an affirmative or negative answer. はい、 そうです is the affirmative answer and いいえ、 そうじゃ ありません is the negative answer.

- ⑤ それは テレホンカードですか。 Is that a telephone card?  
…はい、 そうです。 …Yes, it is. (lit. Yes, it's so.)
- ⑥ それは テレホンカードですか。 Is that a telephone card?  
…いいえ、 そうじゃ ありません。 …No, it isn't. (lit. No, it's not so.)

The verb ちがいます (lit. to differ) can be used to mean そうじゃ ありません.

- ⑦ それは テレホンカードですか。 Is that a telephone card?  
…いいえ、 違います。 …No, it isn't.

#### 4. [ S<sub>1</sub> か、 S<sub>2</sub> か ]

This is a question asking the listener to choose between alternatives, S<sub>1</sub> and S<sub>2</sub>, for the answer. As an answer to this type of question, the chosen sentence is stated. Neither はい nor いいえ is used.

- ⑧ これは 「9」ですか、「7」ですか。 Is this a “9” or a “7”?  
 … 「9」です。 …It’s a “9.”

#### 5. [ N<sub>1</sub> の N<sub>2</sub> ]

You learned in Lesson 1 that の is used to connect two nouns when N<sub>1</sub> modifies N<sub>2</sub>. In Lesson 2 you learn two other uses of this の.

1) N<sub>1</sub> explains what N<sub>2</sub> is about.

- ⑨ これは コンピューターの 本です。 This is a book on computers.

2) N<sub>1</sub> explains who owns N<sub>2</sub>.

- ⑩ これは わたしの 本です。 This is my book.

N<sub>2</sub> is sometimes omitted when it is obvious. When N<sub>2</sub> means a person, however, you cannot omit it.

- ⑪ あれは だれの かばんですか。  
 …佐藤さんのです。

Whose bag is that?  
 …It’s Ms. Sato’s.

- ⑫ この かばんは あなたのですか。  
 …いいえ、わたしのじゃ ありません。

Is this bag yours?  
 …No, it’s not mine.

- ⑬ ミラーさんは IMCの 社員ですか。  
 …はい、 IMCの 社員です。

Is Mr. Miller an employee of IMC?  
 …Yes, he is.

#### 6. そうですか

This expression is used when the speaker receives new information and shows that he or she understands it.

- ⑭ この 傘は あなたのですか。  
 …いいえ、違います。シュミットさんのです。  
 そうですか。

Is this umbrella yours?  
 …No, it’s Mr. Schmidt’s.  
 I see.

# Lesson 3

## I. Vocabulary

3

|            |        |   |
|------------|--------|---|
| ここ         |        | here, this place  |
| そこ         |        | there, that place near you                                    |
| あそこ        |        | that place over there   |
| どこ         |        | where, what place   |
| こちら        |        | this way, this place (polite equivalent of ここ)                |
| そちら        |        | that way, that place near you<br>(polite equivalent of そこ)    |
| あちら        |        | that way, that place over there<br>(polite equivalent of あそこ) |
| どちら        |        | which way, where (polite equivalent of どこ)                    |
| きょうしつ      | 教室     | classroom   |
| しょくどう      | 食堂     | dining hall, canteen  |
| じむしょ       | 事務所    | office  |
| かいぎしつ      | 会議室    | conference room, assembly room                                |
| うけつけ       | 受付     | reception desk  |
| ロビー        |        | lobby   |
| へや         | 部屋     | room  |
| トイレ(おてあらい) | (お手洗い) | toilet, rest room   |
| かいだん       | 階段     | staircase   |
| エレベーター     |        | elevator, lift  |
| エスカレーター    |        | escalator   |
| [お]くに      | [お]国   | country   |
| かいしゃ       | 会社     | company   |
| うち         |        | house, home   |
| でんわ        | 電話     | telephone, telephone call                                     |
| くつ         | 靴      | shoes   |
| ネクタイ       |        | necktie   |
| ワイン        |        | wine  |
| たばこ        |        | tobacco, cigarette  |
| うりば        | 売り場    | department, counter (in a department store)                   |

|           |    |              |
|-----------|----|--------------|
| ちか        | 地下 | basement     |
| -かい (-がい) | -階 | -th floor    |
| なんがい      | 何階 | what floor   |
| ーえん       | ー円 | — yen        |
| いくら       |    | how much     |
| ひゃく       | 百  | hundred      |
| せん        | 千  | thousand     |
| まん        | 万  | ten thousand |

### △会話△

|               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| すみません。        | Excuse me.                |
| ～でございます。      | (polite equivalent of です) |
| [～を] 見せてください。 | Please show me [～].       |
| じゃ            | well, then, in that case  |
| [～を] ください。    | Give me [～], please.      |

~~~~~

|               |                            |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| しんわおさか<br>新大阪 | name of a station in Osaka |
| イタリア          | Italy                      |
| スイス           | Switzerland                |
| MT／ヨーネン／アキックス | fictitious companies       |

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. This is a dining hall.
2. The telephone is over there.

### Example Sentences

1. Is this Shin-Osaka?  
…Yes, it is.
2. Where is the rest room?  
…It is over there.
3. Where is Mr. Yamada?  
…He is in the office.
4. Where is the elevator?  
…It is there.
5. Which country are you from?  
…America.
6. Where are those shoes from?  
…They’re Italian shoes.
7. How much is this watch?  
…It’s 18,600 yen.

### Conversation

#### I’ll take it

Maria: Excuse me. Where is the wine department?

Sales clerk A: It is in the first basement.

Maria: Thanks.

---

Maria: Excuse me. Could you show me that wine?

Sales clerk B: Certainly. Here you are.

Maria: Is this French wine?

Sales clerk B: No, it’s Italian.

Maria: How much is it?

Sales clerk B: 2,500 yen.

Maria: Well, I’ll take it.

### III. Reference Words & Information

デパート

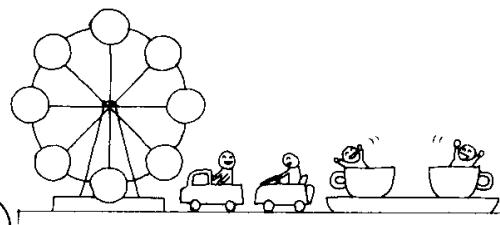
DEPARTMENT STORE

3

屋上

遊園地

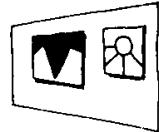
amusement area



8階

食堂・催し物会場

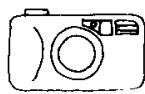
restaurants · event hall



7階

時計・眼鏡・カメラ

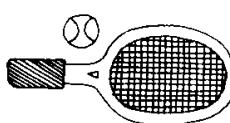
watches · glasses · cameras



6階

スポーツ用品・旅行用品

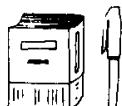
sporting goods · leisure goods



5階

子ども服・おもちゃ・本・文房具

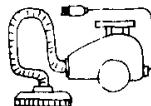
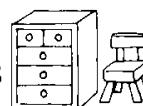
children's clothes · toys · books · stationery



4階

家具・食器・電気製品

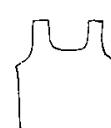
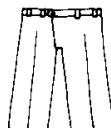
furniture · kitchenware · electrical appliances



3階

紳士服

men's wear



2階

婦人服

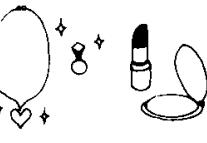
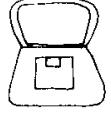
ladies' wear



1階

靴・かばん・アクセサリー・化粧品

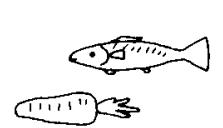
shoes · bags · accessories · cosmetics



B1階

食料品

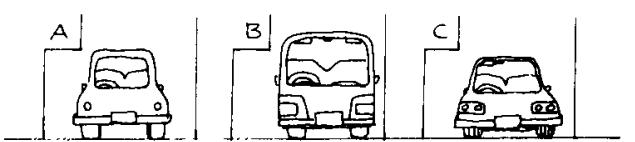
food



B2階

駐車場

parking lot



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. ここ／そこ／あそこ／こちら／そちら／あちら

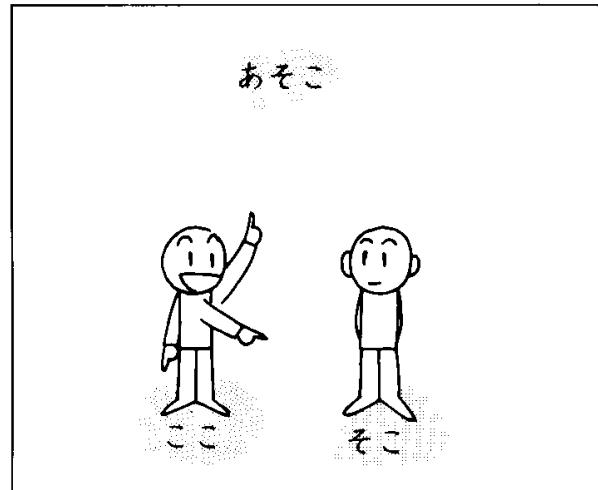
3

The demonstratives これ, それ and あれ that are discussed in Lesson 2 refer to a thing, while ここ, そこ and あそこ refer to a place. ここ is the place where the speaker is, そこ is the place where the listener is, and あそこ is the place far from both the speaker and the listener.

こちら, そちら and あちら are demonstrative words referring to direction. こちら, そちら and あちら are also used to refer to location, in which case, they are politer than ここ, そこ and あそこ.

[Note] When the speaker regards the listener as sharing his/her territory, the place where they both are is designated by the word ここ. Under this situation, そこ designates the place a little distant from the speaker and listener, and あそこ designates an even more distant location.

28



### 2. N<sub>1</sub>は N<sub>2</sub>(place)です

Using this sentence pattern, you can explain where a place, a thing or a person is.

- ① お手洗いは あそこです。
- ② 電話は 2階です。
- ③ 山田さんは 事務所です。

The rest room is there.

The telephone is on the second floor.

Mr. Yamada is in the office.

### 3. どこ／どちら

どこ means “where,” and どちら means “which direction.” どちら can also mean “where,” in which case it’s politer than どこ.

- ④ お手洗いは どこですか。  
…あそこです。
- ⑤ エレベーターは どちらですか。  
…あちらです。

Where's the rest room?

…It's there.

Where's the elevator?

…It's in that direction. (It's there.)

どこ or どちら is also used to ask the name of a country, company, school or any place or organization a person belongs to. You cannot use なん(what). どちら is politer than どこ.

- ⑥ 学校は どこですか。  
⑦ 会社は どちらですか。

What's the name of your school?  
What company do you work for?

#### 4. **N<sub>1</sub> の N<sub>2</sub>**

When N<sub>1</sub> is the name of a country and N<sub>2</sub> is a product, it means that N<sub>2</sub> is made in that country. When N<sub>1</sub> is the name of a company and N<sub>2</sub> is a product, it means that N<sub>2</sub> is made by that company. In this structure, どこ is used to ask where or by whom N<sub>2</sub> is made.

- ⑧ これは どこの コンピューターですか。  
…日本の コンピューターです。  
…IMCの コンピューターです。

Where is this computer made?/ Who is the maker of this computer?

…It's made in Japan.  
…IMC is.

#### 5. The こ/そ/あ/ど system of demonstrative words

29

|                             | こ series | そ series | あ series | ど series        |
|-----------------------------|----------|----------|----------|-----------------|
| thing                       | これ       | それ       | あれ       | どれ (L. 8)       |
| thing<br>person             | この N     | その N     | あの N     | どの N<br>(L. 16) |
| place                       | ここ       | そこ       | あそこ      | どこ              |
| direction<br>place (polite) | こちら      | そちら      | あちら      | どちら             |

#### 6. お国

The prefix お is added to a word concerning the listener or a third person in order to express the speaker's respect to the person.

- ⑨ [お]国は どちらですか。 Where are you from?

# Lesson 4

## I. Vocabulary

|           |       |                             |
|-----------|-------|-----------------------------|
| おきます      | 起きます  | get up, wake up             |
| ねます       | 寝ます   | sleep, go to bed            |
| はたらきます    | 働きます  | work                        |
| やすみます     | 休みます  | take a rest, take a holiday |
| べんきょうします  | 勉強します | study                       |
| おわります     | 終わります | finish                      |
| デパート      |       | department store            |
| ぎんこう      | 銀行    | bank                        |
| ゆうびんきょく   | 郵便局   | post office                 |
| としょかん     | 図書館   | library                     |
| びじゅつかん    | 美術館   | art museum                  |
| いま        | 今     | now                         |
| ーじ        | ー時    | - o'clock                   |
| ーふん (-ぶん) | ー分    | - minute                    |
| はん        | 半     | half                        |
| なんじ       | 何時    | what time                   |
| なんぶん      | 何分    | what minute                 |
| ごぜん       | 午前    | a.m., morning               |
| ごご        | 午後    | p.m., afternoon             |
| あさ        | 朝     | morning                     |
| ひる        | 昼     | daytime, noon               |
| ばん (よる)   | 晩 (夜) | night, evening              |
| おととい      |       | the day before yesterday    |
| きのう       |       | yesterday                   |
| きょう       |       | today                       |
| あした       |       | tomorrow                    |
| あさって      |       | the day after tomorrow      |
| けさ        |       | this morning                |
| こんばん      | 今晚    | this evening, tonight       |
| やすみ       | 休み    | rest, a holiday, a day off  |
| ひるやすみ     | 昼休み   | lunchtime                   |

まいあさ  
まいばん  
まいにち

毎朝  
毎晩  
毎日

every morning  
every night  
every day

げつようび  
かようび  
すいようび  
もくようび  
きんようび  
どようび  
にちようび  
なんようび

月曜日  
火曜日  
水曜日  
木曜日  
金曜日  
土曜日  
日曜日  
何曜日

Monday  
Tuesday  
Wednesday  
Thursday  
Friday  
Saturday  
Sunday  
what day of the week

ばんごう  
なんばん

番号  
何番

number  
what number

～から  
～まで

from ~  
up to ~, until ~

～と～

and (used to connect nouns)

そちら  
たいへんですね。  
えーと

大変ですね。  
your place  
That's tough, isn't it? (used when expressing sympathy)  
well, let me see

## ◆会話◆

104

お願いします。

information, directory assistance

かしこまりました。

Please. (lit. ask for a favor)

お問い合わせの番号

Certainly (sir, madam)

[どうも] ありがとうございました。

the number being inquired about

Thank you very much.

~~~~~

ニューヨーク  
ペキン  
ロンドン  
バンコク  
ロサンゼルス  
やまと美術館  
大阪デパート  
みどり図書館  
アップル銀行

New York  
Beijing (北京)  
London  
Bangkok  
Los Angeles  
fictitious art museum  
fictitious department store  
fictitious library  
fictitious bank

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. It is five past four now.
2. I work from nine to five.
3. I get up at six in the morning.
4. I studied yesterday.

4

### Example Sentences

1. What time is it now?  
...It is ten past two.  
What time is it now in New York?  
...It is ten past twelve at night.
2. From what time to what time is the bank open?  
...It is open from nine till three.  
On what day of the week is it closed?  
...It is closed on Saturdays and Sundays.
3. What time do you go to bed every night?  
...I go to bed at eleven o'clock.
4. Do you work on Saturdays?  
...No, I don't.
5. Did you study yesterday?  
...No, I didn't.
6. What is the telephone number of IMC?  
...It is 341-2597.

32

### Conversation

#### What are your opening hours?

- 104: Hello, this is Ishida of the 104 Service.  
Karina: Could you tell me the phone number of the Yamato Art Museum, please?  
104: The Yamato Art Museum? Certainly.  
-----  
Tape: The number you are inquiring about is 0797-38-5432.  
-----

#### Museum

- staff member: Hello, Yamato Art Museum.  
Karina: Excuse me. What are your opening hours?  
Staff: We are open from nine to four.  
Karina: Which day of the week are you closed?  
Staff: We are closed on Mondays.  
Karina: Thank you very much.

### III. Reference Words & Information

電話・手紙

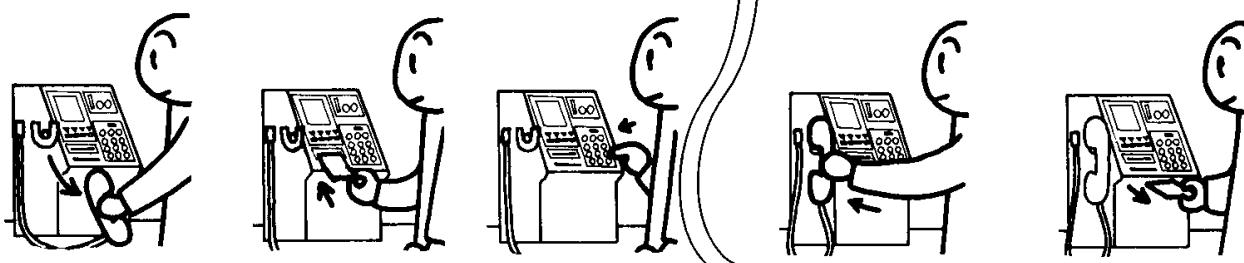
PHONE & LETTER



#### How to Use a Public Phone

4

- ① Lift the receiver.
- ② Put coin or card into slot.
- ③ Press the numbers.
- ④ Hang up the receiver.
- ⑤ Take card or change if any.



Public phones accept only ¥10 coins, ¥100 coins, and telephone cards.

If you put in a ¥100 coin, no change will be returned.

\* If the machine has a start button, press it after ③.



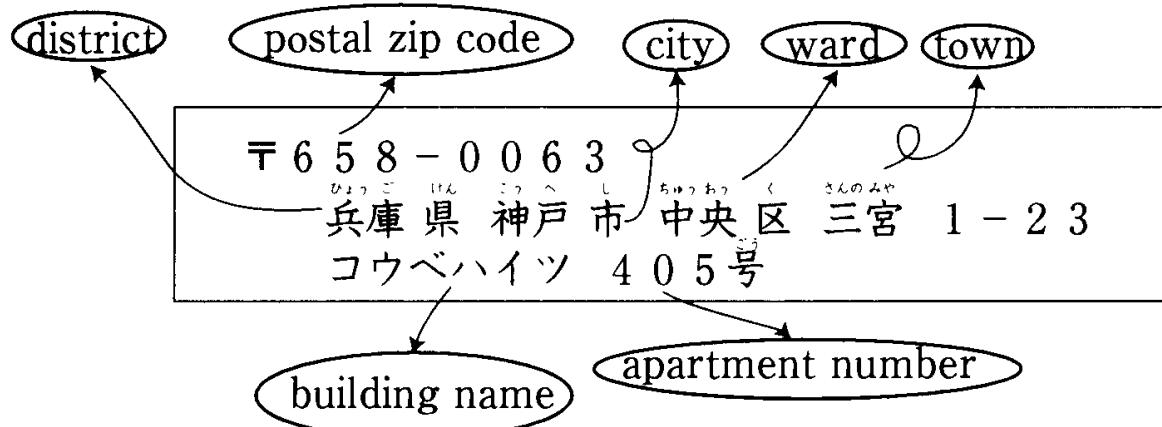
#### Emergency Numbers and Others

33

|       |        |                               |
|-------|--------|-------------------------------|
| 1 1 0 | 警察署    | police                        |
| 1 1 9 | 消防署    | fire/ambulance                |
| 1 1 7 | 時報     | time                          |
| 1 7 7 | 天氣予報   | weather forecast              |
| 1 0 4 | 電話番号案内 | directory assistance services |



#### How to Write an Address



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. 今 - 時 - 分 です

To express time, the counter suffixes 時 (o'clock) and 分 (minutes) are used. The numbers are put before them. 分 is read ふん after 2, 5, 7 or 9 and ぶん after 1, 3, 4, 6, 8 or 10. 1, 6, 8 and 10 are read いっ, ろっ, はっ and じゅつ (じっ) before ぶん. (See Appendices II.)

The interrogative なん is used with a counter suffix to ask questions concerning number or amounts. Therefore, the word なんじ (or sometimes なんぶん) is used to ask the time.

① 今 何時ですか。

What time is it now?

… 7 時 10 分 です。

… It's seven ten.

[Note] は marks the topic of a sentence, which you learned in Lesson 1. A geographical location can also be used as the topic as can be seen in ②.

② ニューヨークは 今 何時ですか。 In New York what time is it now?

… 午前 4 時 です。

… It's 4 a.m.

### 2. V ます

1) A verb with ます works as a predicate.

2) ます makes a sentence polite.

③ わたしは 毎日 勉強します。 I study every day.

### 3. V ます / V ません / V ました / V ませんでした

1) ます is used when a sentence expresses a habitual thing or a truth. It is also used when a sentence expresses a thing that will occur in the future. The negative form and the forms in the past tense are shown in the table below.

|             | non-past (future/present) | past        |
|-------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| affirmative | (おき) ます                   | (おき) ました    |
| negative    | (おき) ません                  | (おき) ませんでした |

④ 每朝 6 時に 起きます。

I get up at six every morning.

⑤ あした 6 時に 起きます。

I'll get up at six tomorrow morning.

⑥ けさ 6 時に 起きました。

I got up at six this morning.

2) Question forms of verb sentences are made in the same way as those of noun sentences; i.e., the word order remains the same and か is added to the end of the sentence.

In answering such questions, the verbs in the questions are repeated. そうです or そうじゃ ありません (see Lesson 2) cannot be used.

⑦ きのう 勉強しましたか。

Did you study yesterday?

… はい、 勉強しました。

… Yes, I did.

… いいえ、 勉強ませんでした。

… No, I didn't.

- ⑧ 每朝 何時に 起きますか。  
… 6時に 起きます。

What time do you get up every morning?  
… I get up at six.

#### 4. **N<sub>1</sub>(time)に V**

When a verb denotes a momentary action or movement, the time when it occurs is marked with the particle に. に is added when the noun before it uses a numeral. It can also be added to the days of the week, though it is not essential. When the noun does not use a numeral, に is not added.

- ⑨ 6時半に 起きます。 I get up at six thirty.  
⑩ 7月2日に 日本へ 来ました。 I came to Japan on July 2nd. (L. 5)  
⑪ 日曜日[に] 奈良へ 行きます。 I'm going to Nara on Sunday. (L. 5)  
⑫ きのう 勉強しました。 I studied yesterday.

#### 5. **N<sub>1</sub> から N<sub>2</sub>まで**

1) から indicates the starting time or place, and まで indicates the finishing time or place.

- ⑬ 9時から 5時まで 働きます。 I work from nine to five.  
⑭ 大阪から 東京まで 3時間 かかります。  
It takes three hours from Osaka to Tokyo. (L. 11)

2) から and まで are not always used together.

- ⑮ 9時から 働きます。 I work from nine.

3) ~から, ~まで or ~から~まで is sometimes used with です added directly after either.

- ⑯ 銀行は 9時から 3時までです。 The bank is open from nine to three.  
⑰ 昼休みは 12時からです。 Lunchtime starts at twelve.

#### 6. **N<sub>1</sub> と N<sub>2</sub>**

The particle と connects two nouns in coordinate relation.

- ⑲ 銀行の 休みは 土曜日と 日曜日です。  
The bank is closed on Saturdays and Sundays.

#### 7. **Sね**

ね is attached to the end of a sentence to add feeling to what the speaker says. It shows the speaker's sympathy or the speaker's expectation that the listener will agree. In the latter usage, it is often used to confirm something.

- ⑲ 毎日 10時ごろまで 勉強します。 I study till about ten every day.  
… 大変ですね。 … That must be hard.  
⑳ 山田さんの 電話番号は 871の 6813です。  
… 871の 6813ですね。  
Mr. Yamada's telephone number is 871-6813.  
… 871-6813, right?

# Lesson 5

## I. Vocabulary

|        |      |                                  |
|--------|------|----------------------------------|
| いきます   | 行きます | go                               |
| きます    | 来ます  | come                             |
| かえります  | 帰ります | go home, return                  |
| がっこう   | 学校   | school                           |
| スーパー   |      | supermarket                      |
| えき     | 駅    | station                          |
| ひこうき   | 飛行機  | airplane                         |
| ふね     | 船    | ship                             |
| でんしゃ   | 電車   | electric train                   |
| ちかてつ   | 地下鉄  | subway, underground              |
| しんかんせん | 新幹線  | the Shinkansen, the bullet train |
| バス     |      | bus                              |
| タクシー   |      | taxi                             |
| じてんしゃ  | 自転車  | bicycle                          |
| あるいて   | 歩いて  | on foot                          |
| ひと     | 人    | person, people                   |
| ともだち   | 友達   | friend                           |
| かれ     | 彼    | he, boyfriend, lover             |
| かのじょ   | 彼女   | she, girlfriend, lover           |
| かぞく    | 家族   | family                           |
| ひとりで   | 一人で  | alone, by oneself                |
| せんしゅう  | 先週   | last week                        |
| こんしゅう  | 今週   | this week                        |
| らいしゅう  | 来週   | next week                        |
| せんげつ   | 先月   | last month                       |
| こんげつ   | 今月   | this month                       |
| らいげつ   | 来月   | next month                       |
| きょねん   | 去年   | last year                        |
| ことし    |      | this year                        |
| らいねん   | 来年   | next year                        |

|         |     |                                       |
|---------|-----|---------------------------------------|
| -がつ     | 一月  | -th month of the year                 |
| なんがつ    | 何月  | what month                            |
| ついたち    | 1日  | first day of the month                |
| ふつか     | 2日  | second, two days                      |
| みっか     | 3日  | third, three days                     |
| よっか     | 4日  | fourth, four days                     |
| いつか     | 5日  | fifth, five days                      |
| むいか     | 6日  | sixth, six days                       |
| なのか     | 7日  | seventh, seven days                   |
| ようか     | 8日  | eighth, eight days                    |
| ここのか    | 9日  | ninth, nine days                      |
| とおか     | 10日 | tenth, ten days                       |
| じゅうよっか  | 14日 | fourteenth, fourteen days             |
| はつか     | 20日 | twentieth, twenty days                |
| にじゅうよっか | 24日 | twenty fourth, twenty four days       |
| ーにち     | 一日  | -th day of the month, - days          |
| なんにち    | 何日  | which day of the month, how many days |

いつ

when

37

たんじょうび

誕生日

birthday

ふつう

きゅうこう

とっきゅう

普通

急行

特急

local (train)

rapid

express

つぎの

次の

next

## ◀会話▶

どういたしまして。

—番線

You're welcome./Don't mention it.

platform —, -th platform

博多  
伏見  
甲子園  
大阪城

name of a town in Kyushu

name of a town in Kyoto

name of a town near Osaka

Osaka Castle, a famous castle in Osaka

## **II. Translation**

### **Sentence Patterns**

1. I [will] go to Kyoto.
2. I [will] go home by taxi.
3. I came to Japan with my family.

**5**

### **Example Sentences**

1. Where will you go tomorrow?  
…I will go to Nara.
2. Where did you go last Sunday?  
…I didn’t go anywhere.
3. How will you go to Tokyo?  
…I will go by Shinkansen.
4. Who will you go to Tokyo with?  
…I will go with Mr. Yamada.
5. When did you come to Japan?  
…I came here on March 25th.
6. When is your birthday?  
…It is June 13th.

38

### **Conversation**

#### **Does this train go to Koshien?**

- Santos: Excuse me. How much is it to Koshien?  
Woman : It’s 350 yen.  
Santos: 350 yen? Thank you very much.  
Woman : You’re welcome.
- 

- Santos: Excuse me. What platform is it for Koshien?  
Station employee: No. 5.  
Santos: Thanks.
- 

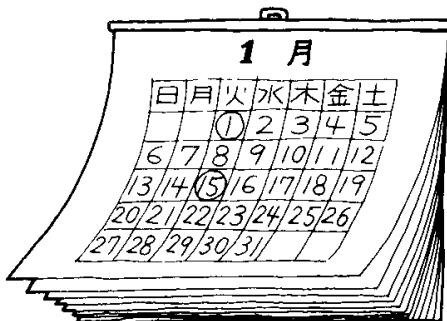
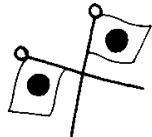
- Santos: Excuse me. Does this train go to Koshien?  
Man: No, it doesn’t. The next “local train” does.  
Santos: Thank you very much.

### III. Reference Words & Information

祝祭日  
しゅくさいじつ

### NATIONAL HOLIDAYS

5



1月1日  
がつついいたち

1月第2月曜日\*\*  
がつだい がつ ゆうび

2月11日  
がつ にち

3月20日\*  
がつ にち

4月29日  
がつみっか

5月3日  
がつよっか

5月4日  
がついつか

5月5日  
がつはつか

7月20日  
がつ にち

9月15日  
がつ にち

9月23日\*  
がつだい がつ ゆうび

10月第2月曜日\*\*  
がつだい がつ ゆうび

11月3日  
がつ にち

11月23日  
がつ にち

12月23日  
がつ にち

元日  
がんじつ

成人の日  
せいじん のひ

建国記念の日  
けんこくきねん のひ

春分の日  
しゅんぶん のひ

みどりの日  
けんぼう きねん のひ

憲法記念日  
けいほう きねん のひ

国民の休日  
こくみん きゅうじつ

子どもの日  
こどものひ

海の日  
うみ のひ

敬老の日  
けいろう のひ

秋分の日  
しゅうぶん のひ

体育の日  
たいいく のひ

文化の日  
ぶんか のひ

勤労感謝の日  
きんろう かんしゃ のひ

天皇誕生日  
てんのうたんじょう のひ

New Year's Day

Coming-of-Age Day

National Foundation Day

Vernal Equinox Day

Greener Day

Constitution Memorial Day

Nation's Day

Children's Day

Marine Day

Respect-for-the-Aged Day

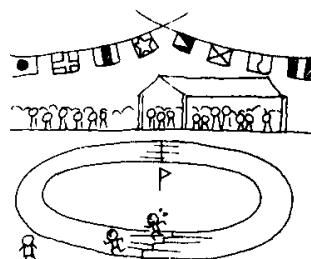
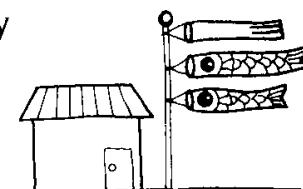
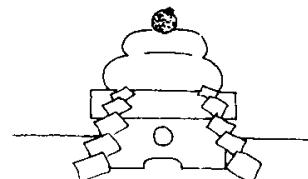
Autumnal Equinox Day

Health and Sports Day

Culture Day

Labor Thanksgiving Day

The Emperor's Birthday



\* Varies from year to year.

\*\* The second Monday



If a national holiday falls on a Sunday, the following Monday is taken off instead. From April 29th to May 5th is a series of holidays, called ゴールデンウィーク (Golden Week). Some big companies give a whole week's holiday to employees.

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. N(place) へ 行きます／来ます／帰ります

When a verb indicates movement to a certain place, the particle へ is put after the place noun to show the direction of the move.

① 京都へ 行きます。

I will go to Kyoto.

② 日本へ 来ました。

I came to Japan.

③ うちへ 帰ります。

I will go home.

[Note] The particle へ is read え.

### 2. どこ [へ] も 行きません／行きませんでした

When an interrogative takes the particle も and the verb following it is negative, all that is represented by the interrogative is denied.

④ どこ [へ] も 行きません。

I don't go anywhere.

⑤ 何も 食べません。

I don't eat anything. (L. 6)

⑥ だれも いません。

Nobody is there. (L. 10)

### 3. N(vehicle) で 行きます／来ます／帰ります

The particle で indicates a means or a method. When verbs denoting movement (いきます, きます, かえります, etc.) are used with で, で indicates a means of transportation. The noun preceding で is a vehicle in this case.

⑦ 電車で 行きます。

I'll go by train.

⑧ タクシーで 来ました。

I came by taxi.

When you walk somewhere, you use the expression あるいて. In this case, で is not used.

⑨ 駅から 歩いて 帰りました。

I walked home from the station.

### 4. N(person/animal) と V

When you do something with a person (or an animal), the person (or the animal) is marked with the particle と.

⑩ 家族と 日本へ 来ました。

I came to Japan with my family.

If you do something alone, the expression ひとりで is used. In this case, と is not used.

⑪ 一人で 東京へ 行きます。

I'll go to Tokyo alone.

## 5. いつ

To ask about time, the interrogatives using なん such as なんじ, なんようび and なんがつなんにち are used. Other than these, the interrogative いつ (when) is also used to ask when something will happen/happened. いつ does not take the particle に.

5

- ⑫ いつ 日本へ 来ましたか。  
… 3月25日に 来ました。
- ⑬ いつ 広島へ 行きますか。  
… 来週 行きます。

When did you come to Japan?

… I came on March 25th.

When will you go to Hiroshima?  
… I'll go there next week.

## 6. S よ

よ is placed at the end of a sentence. It is used to emphasize information which the listener does not know, or to show that you are giving your judgement or views assertively.

- ⑭ この 電車は 甲子園へ 行きますか。  
…いいえ、行きません。次の 普通ですよ。
- Does this train go to Koshien?  
… No, it doesn't. The next local train does.
- ⑮ 無理な ダイエットは 体に よくないですよ。
- Excessive dieting is bad for your health. (L. 19)

41

# Lesson 6

## I. Vocabulary

|      |      |  |
|------|------|--|
| たべます | 食べます | eat                                    |
| のみます | 飲みます | drink                                  |
| すいます | 吸います | smoke [a cigarette]<br>[たばこを～]         |
| みます  | 見ます  | see, look at, watch                    |
| ききます | 聞きます | hear, listen                           |
| よみます | 読みます | read                                   |
| かきます | 書きます | write, draw, paint                     |
| かいます | 買います | buy                                    |
| とります | 撮ります | take [a photograph]<br>[しゃしんを～] [写真を～] |
| します  |      | do                                     |
| あいます | 会います | meet [a friend]<br>[ともだちに～] [友達に～]     |

|       |      |                     |
|-------|------|---------------------|
| ごはん   |      | a meal, cooked rice |
| あさごはん | 朝ごはん | breakfast           |
| ひるごはん | 昼ごはん | lunch               |
| ばんごはん | 晩ごはん | supper              |

|      |    |           |
|------|----|-----------|
| パン   |    | bread     |
| たまご  | 卵  | egg       |
| にく   | 肉  | meat      |
| さかな  | 魚  | fish      |
| やさい  | 野菜 | vegetable |
| くだもの | 果物 | fruit     |

|                 |      |                             |
|-----------------|------|-----------------------------|
| みず              | 水    | water                       |
| おちゃ             | お茶   | tea, green tea              |
| こうちゃ            | 紅茶   | black tea                   |
| ぎゅうにゅう<br>(ミルク) | 牛乳   | milk                        |
| ジュース            |      | juice                       |
| ビール             |      | beer                        |
| [お]さけ           | [お]酒 | alcohol, Japanese rice wine |

|         |       |  |
|---------|-------|--|
| ビデオ     |       | video tape, video deck                                       |
| えいが     | 映画    | movie  |
| CD      |       | CD, compact disc   |
| てがみ     | 手紙    | letter   |
| レポート    |       | report   |
| しゃしん    | 写真    | photograph   |
| みせ      | 店     | store, shop  |
| レストラン   |       | restaurant   |
| にわ      | 庭     | garden   |
| しゅくだい   | 宿題    | homework (~をします: do homework)                                |
| テニス     |       | tennis (~をします: play tennis)                                  |
| サッカー    |       | soccer, football<br>(~をします: play soccer)                     |
| [お]はなみ  | [お]花見 | cherry-blossom viewing<br>(~をします: go cherry-blossom viewing) |
| なに      | 何     | what   |
| いっしょに   |       | together   |
| ちょっと    |       | a little while, a little bit                                 |
| いつも     |       | always, usually  |
| ときどき    | 時々    | sometimes  |
| それから    |       | after that, and then   |
| ええ      |       | yes  |
| いいですね。  |       | That's good.   |
| わかりました。 |       | I see.   |

## ◀会話▶

何ですか。  
じゃ、また [あした]。 Yes?  
See you [tomorrow].



メキシコ  
おおさかじょうこうえん  
大阪城公園

Mexico  
Osaka Castle park

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. I drink juice.
2. I buy a newspaper at the station.
3. Won't you come to Kobe with me?
4. Let's take a rest for a little bit.

### Example Sentences

- 6
1. Do you smoke?  
…No, I don't.
  2. What do you eat every morning?  
…I have egg and toast.
  3. What did you eat this morning?  
…I didn't eat anything.
  4. What did you do last Saturday?  
…I studied Japanese. Then I saw a movie.  
On Sunday what did you do?  
…I went to Nara with a friend.
  5. Where did you buy that bag?  
…I bought it in Mexico.
  6. Won't you drink some beer with me?  
…Yes, let's have a drink.

### Conversation

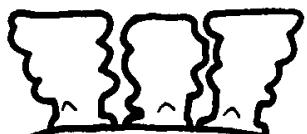
#### Won't you join us?

- Sato: Mr. Miller.  
Miller: Yes?  
Sato: I'm going to enjoy cherry-blossom viewing with my friends tomorrow.  
          Won't you join us, Mr. Miller?  
Miller: That sounds nice. Where will you go?  
Sato: Osakajo-Koen.  
Miller: What time?  
Sato: At ten o'clock. Let's meet at Osakajo-Koen Station.  
Miller: OK.  
Sato: Well, see you tomorrow.

### III. Reference Words & Information

食べ物

FOOD



野菜 Vegetables

|        |                 |
|--------|-----------------|
| きゅうり   | cucumber        |
| トマト    | tomato          |
| なす     | egg plant       |
| まめ     | beans, peas     |
| キャベツ   | cabbage         |
| ねぎ     | Welsh onion     |
| はくさい   | Chinese cabbage |
| ほうれんそう | spinach         |
| レタス    | lettuce         |
| じゃがいも  | potato          |
| だいこん   | Japanese radish |
| たまねぎ   | onion           |
| にんじん   | carrot          |

果物 Fruits

|     |               |     |                 |
|-----|---------------|-----|-----------------|
| いちご | strawberry    | かき  | persimmon       |
| もも  | peach         | みかん | mandarin orange |
| すいか | watermelon    | りんご | apple           |
| ぶどう | grape         | バナナ | banana          |
| なし  | Japanese pear |     |                 |

肉

Meat

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| ぎゅうにく | beef    |
| とりにく  | chicken |
| ぶたにく  | pork    |
| ソーセージ | sausage |
| ハム    | ham     |

こめ  
rice

たまご egg

魚

Fish

|     |                |     |           |    |                 |
|-----|----------------|-----|-----------|----|-----------------|
| あじ  | horse mackerel | さけ  | salmon    | えび | lobster, shrimp |
| いわし | sardine        | まぐろ | tuna      | かに | crab            |
| さば  | mackerel       | たい  | sea bream | いか | cuttlefish      |
| さんま | mackerel pike  | たら  | cod       | たこ | octopus         |

かい  
shellfish



Japan imports more than half of the food consumed by the nation. The rates of self supply of food are as follows: cereals 30%, vegetables 85%, fruits 49%, meat 57%, and sea food 61% (1995, Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry, & Fisheries). Of all the cereals, rice is the only one that Japan is self-sufficient in.

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. N を V (transitive)

を is used to indicate the direct object of a transitive verb.

① ジュースを 飲みます。 I drink juice.

[Note] を and お are pronounced the same. The former is used only in writing the particle.

### 2. N を します

The words used as the objects of the verb します cover a fairly wide range. します means that the action denoted by the noun is performed. Some examples are shown below.

1) to "play" sports or games

サッカーを します

play football

トランプを します

play cards

2) to "hold" gatherings

パーティーを します

give a party

会議を します

hold a meeting

3) to "do" something

宿題を します

do homework

仕事を します

do one's work

### 3. 何を しますか

This is a question to ask what someone does.

② 月曜日 何を しますか。

What will you do on Monday?

…京都へ 行きます。

…I'll go to Kyoto.

③ きのう 何を しましたか。

What did you do yesterday?

…サッカーを しました。

…I played football.

[Note] You can make a word expressing time the topic by adding は.

④ 月曜日は 何を しますか。

On Monday what will you do?

…京都へ 行きます。

…I'll go to Kyoto.

### 4. なん and なに

Both なん and なに mean "what."

1) なん is used in the following cases.

(1) When it precedes a word whose first mora is either in the た, だ or な-row.

⑤ それは 何ですか。

What is that?

⑥ 何の 本ですか。

What is the book about?

⑦ 寝る まえに、何と 言いますか。

What do you say before going to bed? (L. 21)

(2) When it is followed by a counter suffix or the like.

⑧ テレサちゃんは 何歳ですか。 How old is Teresa?

2) なに is used in all other cases.

⑨ 何を 買いますか。 What will you buy?

## 5. N(place) で V

When added after a noun denoting a place, で indicates the place where an action occurs.

⑩ 駅で 新聞を 買います。 I buy the newspaper at the station.

## 6. Vませんか

When you want to invite someone to do something, this expression is used.

⑪ いっしょに 京都へ 行きませんか。  
…ええ、いいですね。

Won't you come to Kyoto with us?

…That's a nice idea.

## 7. Vましょう

This expression is used when a speaker is positively inviting the listener to do something with the speaker. It is also used when responding positively to an invitation.

⑫ ちょっと 休みましょう。 Let's have a break.

⑬ いっしょに 昼ごはんを 食べませんか。  
…ええ、食べましょう。

Won't you have lunch with me?

…Yes, let's go and eat.

[Note] An invitation using Vませんか shows more consideration to the listener's will than that using Vましょう.

## 8. お～

You learned in Lesson 3 that the prefix お is attached to words regarding the listener or the person being referred to to show respect (e.g., [お]くに country).

お is also attached to various other words when the speaker is speaking politely (e.g., [お]さけ alcohol, [お]はなみ cherry-blossom viewing).

There are some words that are usually used with お without meaning respect or politeness (e.g., おちゃ tea, おかね money).

# Lesson 7

## I. Vocabulary

|         |        |                         |
|---------|--------|-------------------------|
| きります    | 切れます   | cut, slice              |
| おくります   | 送ります   | send                    |
| あげます    |        | give                    |
| もらいます   |        | receive                 |
| かします    | 貸します   | lend                    |
| かります    | 借ります   | borrow                  |
| おしえます   | 教えます   | teach                   |
| ならいます   | 習います   | learn                   |
| かけます    |        | make [a telephone call] |
| [でんわを～] | [電話を～] |                         |

|       |      |                                  |
|-------|------|----------------------------------|
| て     | 手    | hand, arm                        |
| はし    |      | chopsticks                       |
| スプーン  |      | spoon                            |
| ナイフ   |      | knife                            |
| フォーク  |      | fork                             |
| はさみ   |      | scissors                         |
| ファクス  |      | fax                              |
| ワープロ  |      | word processor                   |
| パソコン  |      | personal computer                |
| パンチ   |      | punch                            |
| ホッチキス |      | stapler                          |
| セロテープ |      | Scotch tape, clear adhesive tape |
| けしゴム  | 消しゴム | eraser                           |
| かみ    | 紙    | paper                            |
| はな    | 花    | flower, blossom                  |
| シャツ   |      | shirt                            |
| プレゼント |      | present, gift                    |
| にもつ   | 荷物   | baggage, parcel                  |
| おかね   | お金   | money                            |
| きっぷ   | 切符   | ticket                           |
| クリスマス |      | Christmas                        |

|       |      |                         |
|-------|------|-------------------------|
| ちち    | 父    | (my) father             |
| はは    | 母    | (my) mother             |
| おとうさん | お父さん | (someone else's) father |
| おかあさん | お母さん | (someone else's) mother |

|      |                   |
|------|-------------------|
| もう   | already           |
| まだ   | not yet           |
| これから | from now on, soon |

[～.] すてきですね。

What a nice [～]!

## ◆会話◆

ごめんください。

Excuse me./Anybody home?/May I come in? (an expression used by a visitor)

いらっしゃい。

How nice of you to come. (lit. Welcome.)

どうぞ お上がり ください。

Do come in.

失礼します。

Thank you./May I? (lit. I'm afraid I'll be disturbing you.)

[～は] いかがですか。

Won't you have [～]?/Would you like to have [～]? (used when offering something)

いただきます。

Thank you./I accept. (said before starting to eat or drink)

旅行

trip, tour

お土産

(～を します: travel, make a trip)

souvenir, present

ヨーロッパ

Europe

スペイン

Spain

## **II. Translation**

### **Sentence Patterns**

1. I write letters with a word processor.
2. I [will] give some flowers to Ms. Kimura.
3. I received some chocolates from Ms. Karina.

### **Example Sentences**

1. Did you study Japanese through television?  
…No, I studied it through radio.
2. Do you write reports in Japanese?  
…No. I write them in English.
3. What is “Good-bye” in Japanese?  
…It is “Sayonara.”
4. Who will you write Christmas cards to?  
…To my family and friends.
5. What is that?  
…It’s a pocket notebook. I received it from Mr. Yamada.
6. Have you bought your Shinkansen ticket?  
…Yes, I have.
7. Have you finished lunch?  
…No, not yet. I am going to eat now.

### **Conversation**

#### **Hello**

- Jose Santos: Hello.  
Yamada Ichiro: Hello. Please come in.  
Jose Santos: Thank you.
- 

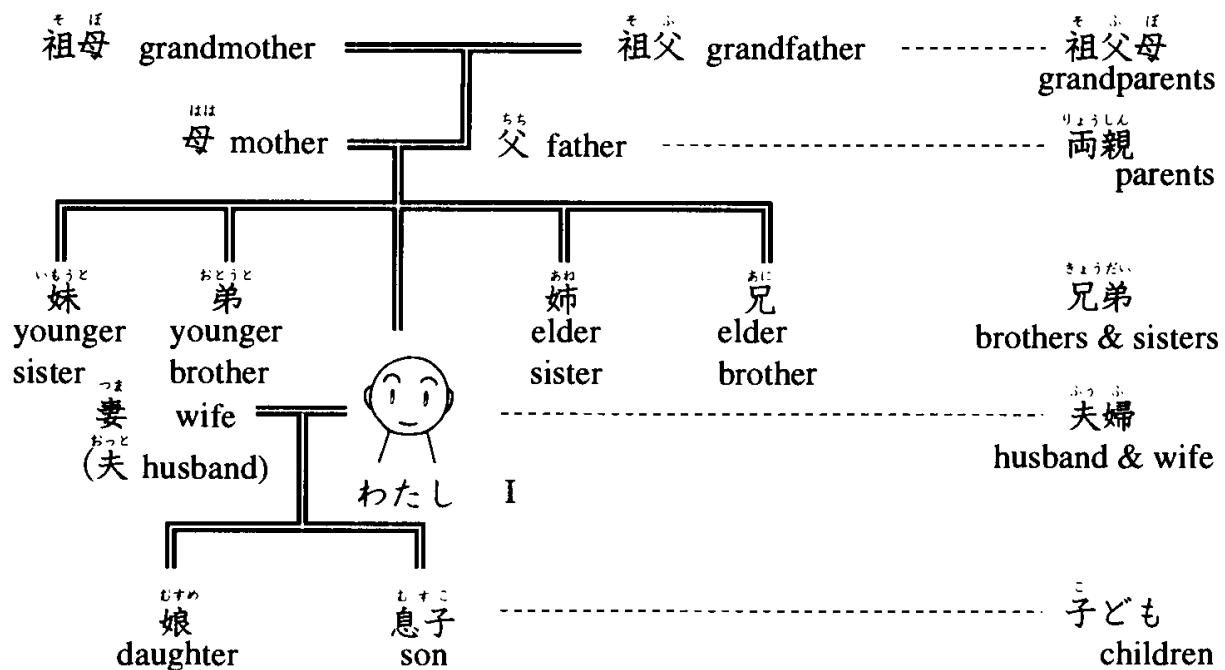
- Yamada Tomoko: How about a cup of coffee?  
Maria Santos: Thank you.
- 

- Yamada Tomoko: Here you are.  
Maria Santos: Thank you.  
This spoon is nice, isn’t it?  
Yamada Tomoko: Yes, it is. Someone in my company gave it to me.  
It’s a souvenir of her trip to Europe.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 家族 FAMILY

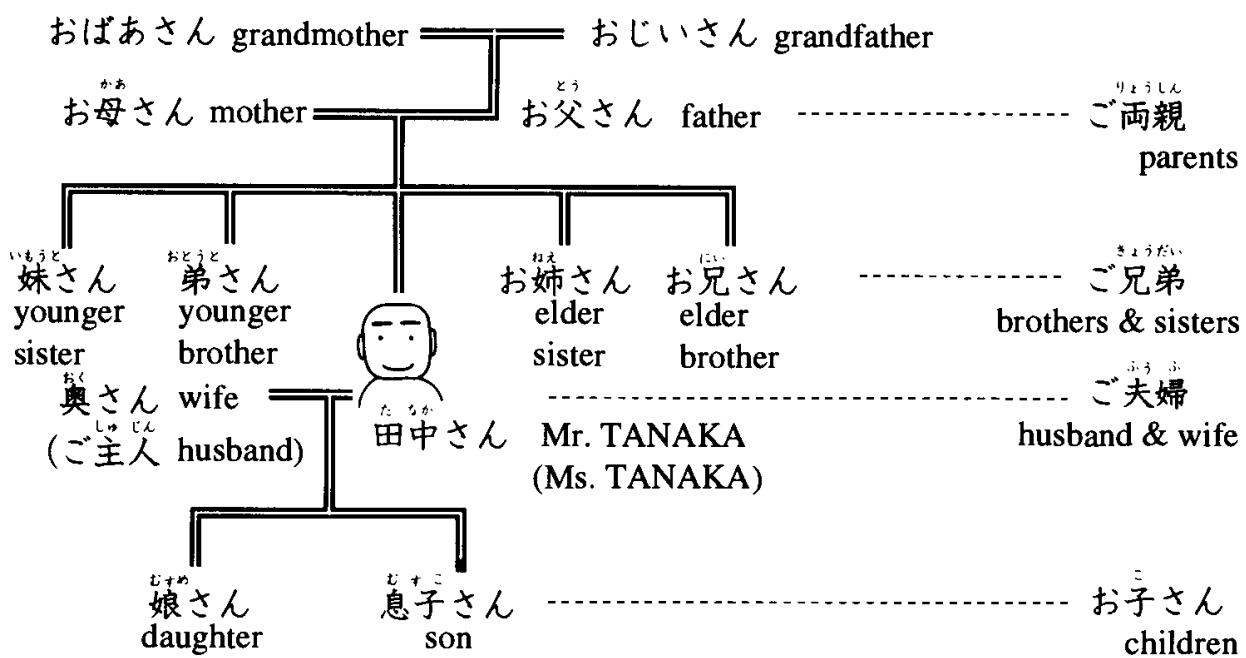
#### わたしの 家族 MY FAMILY



7

51

#### 田中さんの 家族 Mr. (Ms.) TANAKA'S FAMILY



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. [N(tool/means)]で V

The particle で indicates a method or a mean used for an action.

① はしで 食べます。 I eat with chopsticks.

② 日本語で レポートを 書きます。 I write a report in Japanese.

### 2. “Word/Sentence” は ~語で 何ですか

This question is used to ask how to say a word or a sentence in other languages.

③ 「ありがとう」は 英語で 何ですか。

… 「Thank you」です。

What's “ありがとう” in English?

… It's “Thank you.”

④ 「Thank you」は 日本語で 何ですか。

… 「ありがとうございます」です。

What's “Thank you” in Japanese?

… It's “ありがとうございます。”

### 3. [N(person)]に あげます, etc.

Verbs like あげます, かします, おしえます, etc., need persons to whom you give, lend, teach, etc. The persons are marked with に.

⑤ 山田さんは 木村さんに 花を あげました。

Mr. Yamada gave flowers to Ms. Kimura.

⑥ イーさんに 本を 貸しました。

I lent my book to Ms. Lee.

⑦ 太郎君に 英語を 教えます。

I teach Taro English.

[Note] With verbs like おくります, でんわを かけます, etc., place nouns can be used instead of N(person). In this case, the particle へ is sometimes used instead of に.

⑧ 会社に 電話を かけます。

(へ)

I'll call my office.

#### 4. N(person) に もらいます, etc.

Verbs like もらいます, かります and ならいます express actions from the receiving side. The persons from whom you receive those actions are marked with に.

⑨ 木村さんは 山田さんに 花を もらいました。

Ms. Kimura received flowers from Mr. Yamada.

⑩ カリナさんに CDを 借りました。

I borrowed a CD from Ms. Karina.

⑪ ワンさんに 中国語を 習います。

I learn Chinese from Mr. Wang.

から is sometimes used instead of に in this sentence pattern. When you receive something from an organization like a school or a company, only から is used.

⑫ 木村さんは 山田さんから 花を もらいました。

Ms. Kimura received flowers from Mr. Yamada.

⑬ 銀行から お金を 借りました。

I borrowed some money from the bank.

#### 5. もう Vました

もう means “already” and is used with Vました. In this case, Vました means that the action has been finished.

The answer to the question もう Vましたか is はい、もう Vました or いいえ、まだです.

⑭ もう 荷物を 送りましたか。 Have you sent the parcel yet?

…はい、[もう] 送りました。 …Yes, I have [already sent it].

…いいえ、まだです。 …No, not yet.

In giving a negative answer to this type of question, you should not use Vませんでした, as this simply means you did not do the specified task rather than you have not done it yet.

# Lesson 8

## I. Vocabulary

|         |       |                                 |
|---------|-------|---------------------------------|
| ハンサム[な] |       | handsome                        |
| きれい[な]  |       | beautiful, clean                |
| しずか[な]  | 静か[な] | quiet                           |
| にぎやか[な] |       | lively                          |
| ゆうめい[な] | 有名[な] | famous                          |
| しんせつ[な] | 親切[な] | kind                            |
| げんき[な]  | 元気[な] | healthy, sound, cheerful        |
| ひま[な]   | 暇[な]  | free (time)                     |
| べんり[な]  | 便利[な] | convenient                      |
| すてき[な]  |       | fine, nice, wonderful           |
| おおきい    | 大きい   | big, large                      |
| ちいさい    | 小さい   | small, little                   |
| あたらしい   | 新しい   | new                             |
| ふるい     | 古い    | old (not of age)                |
| いい (よい) |       | good                            |
| わるい     | 悪い    | bad                             |
| あつい     | 暑い、熱い | hot                             |
| さむい     | 寒い    | cold (referring to temperature) |
| つめたい    | 冷たい   | cold (referring to touch)       |
| むずかしい   | 難しい   | difficult                       |
| やさしい    | 易しい   | easy                            |
| たかい     | 高い    | expensive, tall, high           |
| やすい     | 安い    | inexpensive                     |
| ひくい     | 低い    | low                             |
| おもしろい   |       | interesting                     |
| おいしい    |       | delicious, tasty                |
| いそがしい   | 忙しい   | busy                            |
| たのしい    | 楽しい   | enjoyable                       |
| しろい     | 白い    | white                           |
| くろい     | 黒い    | black                           |
| あかい     | 赤い    | red                             |
| あおい     | 青い    | blue                            |
| さくら     | 桜     | cherry (blossom)                |
| やま      | 山     | mountain                        |

|        |       |  |
|--------|-------|--|
| まち     | 町     | town, city                                     |
| たべもの   | 食べ物   | food   |
| くるま    | 車     | car, vehicle                                   |
| ところ    | 所     | place  |
| りょう    | 寮     | dormitory                                      |
| べんきょう  | 勉強    | study  |
| せいかつ   | 生活    | life   |
| [お]しごと | [お]仕事 | work, business<br>(～を します: do one's job, work) |

|      |                              |
|------|------------------------------|
| どう   | how                          |
| どんな～ | what kind of ~               |
| どれ   | which one (of three or more) |

|     |                              |
|-----|------------------------------|
| とても | very                         |
| あまり | not so (used with negatives) |

|      |                                 |
|------|---------------------------------|
| そして  | and (used to connect sentences) |
| ～が、～ | ~, but ~                        |

おげんきですか。 お元気ですか。 How are you?  
そうですね。 Well let me see. (pausing)

55

## ◆会話◆

|                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| 日本の 生活に 慣れましたか。   | Have you got used to the life in Japan? |
| [～.]もう 一杯 いかがですか。 | Won't you have another cup of [～]?      |
| いいえ、けっこうです。       | No, thank you.                          |
| もう ～です[ね]。        | It's already ~[, isn't it?].            |
| そろそろ 失礼します。       | It's almost time to leave now.          |
| また いらっしゃって ください。  | Please come again.                      |



富士山  
琵琶湖  
シャンハイ  
「七人の侍」

金閣寺

Mt. Fuji, the highest mountain in Japan  
Lake Biwa, the biggest lake in Japan  
Shanghai (上海)  
“The Seven Samurai,” a classic movie by  
Akira Kurosawa  
Kinkakuji Temple (the Golden Pavilion)

## **II. Translation**

### **Sentence Patterns**

1. Cherry blossoms are beautiful.
2. Mt. Fuji is high.
3. Cherry blossoms are beautiful flowers.
4. Mt. Fuji is a high mountain.

### **Example Sentences**

- 8
1. Is Osaka lively?  
…Yes, it is.
  2. Is the water of Lake Biwa clean?  
…No, it is not so clean.
  3. Is it cold in Beijing now?  
…Yes, it is very cold.  
Is it cold in Shanghai, too?  
…No, it is not so cold.
  4. Is that dictionary good?  
…No, it is not so good.
  5. How do you like the subway in Tokyo?  
…It is clean. And it is convenient.
  6. I saw a movie yesterday.  
…What kind of movie was it?  
It was “The Seven Samurai.” It is old, but a very interesting movie.
  7. Which is Mr. Miller’s umbrella?  
…That blue one is.

### **Conversation**

#### **It's almost time to leave**

- 56
- Yamada Ichiro: Have you got accustomed to living in Japan, Maria?
- Maria Santos: Yes, I have. I enjoy it every day.
- Yamada Ichiro: Really? Mr. Santos, how is your work?
- Jose Santos: Well, it's busy, but interesting.

---

Yamada Tomoko: Would you like another cup of coffee?

Maria Santos: No, thank you.

---

Jose Santos: Oh, it's eight o'clock now. We must be going.

Yamada Ichiro: You must?

Maria Santos: Thank you for everything today.

Yamada Tomoko: Our pleasure. Please come again.

### III. Reference Words & Information

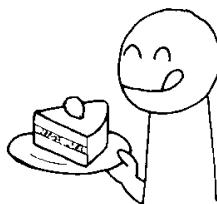
#### いろ・あじ 色・味 COLOR & TASTE

##### いろ 色 Color

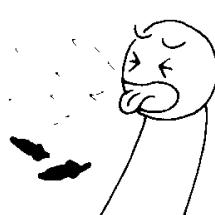
| noun     | adjective | noun        | adjective |
|----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| 白 white  | 白い        | 黄色 yellow   | 黄色い       |
| 黒 black  | 黒い        | 茶色 brown    | 茶色い       |
| 赤 red    | 赤い        | ピンク pink    | —         |
| 青 blue   | 青い        | オレンジ orange | —         |
| 緑 green  | —         | グレー gray    | —         |
| 紫 purple | —         | ベージュ beige  | —         |

##### あじ 味 Taste

甘い sweet



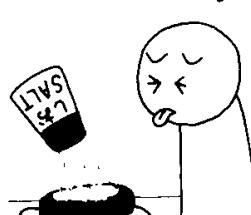
辛い hot



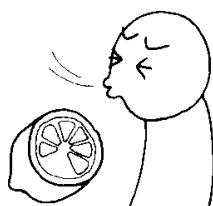
苦い bitter



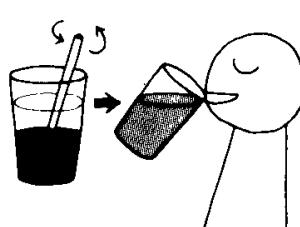
塩辛い salty



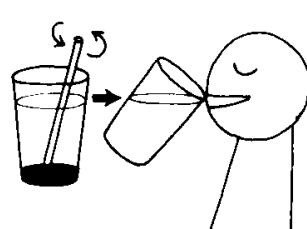
酸っぱい sour



濃い thick, strong



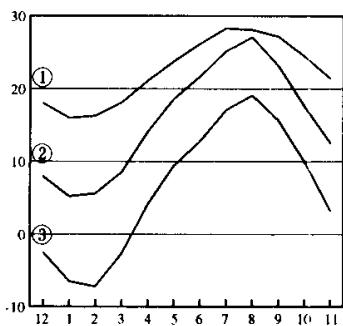
薄い thin, weak



春・夏・秋・冬 Spring-Summer-Autumn-Winter

There are four seasons in Japan, spring (March, April, May), summer (June, July, August), autumn (September, October, November), and winter (December, January, February). The average temperature varies from place to place, but the change patterns are almost the same (see the graph).

The hottest month is August and the coldest, January or February. So Japanese people feel that "summer is hot," "autumn is cool," "winter is cold," and "spring is warm."



① NAHA (OKINAWA)

② TOKYO

③ ABASHIRI (HOKKAIDO)

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Adjectives

Adjectives are used as 1) predicates and 2) noun modifiers. They inflect and are divided into two groups, い-adjectives and な-adjectives, according to the inflection.

### 2. Nは な-adj [な] です Nは い-adj (~い) です

1) です at the end of an adjective sentence shows the speaker's polite attitude toward the listener. An い-adjective with い at the end comes before です, whereas a な-adjective without [な] comes before です.

- ① ワット先生は 親切です。 Mr. Watt is kind.  
② 富士山は 高いです。 Mt. Fuji is high.

です is used when a sentence is non-past and affirmative.

2) な-adj [な] じゃ ありません

The negative form of な-adj [な] です is な-adj [な] じゃ ありません.  
(な-adj [な] ではありません)

- ③ あそこは 静かじゃ ありません。  
(では) It's not quiet there.

3) い-adj (~い) です → ~くないです

To make the negative form of an い-adjective, い at the end of the い-adjective is altered to くない.

- ④ この 本は おもしろくないです。 This book is not interesting.  
The negative for いいです is よくないです.

4) Questions using adjective sentences are made in the same way as those using noun or verb sentences. In answering a question, you repeat the adjective used in the question. そうです or そうじゃ ありません cannot be used.

- ⑤ ペキンは 寒いですか。  
…はい、寒いです。 Is it cold in Beijing?  
…Yes, it is.  
⑥ 琵琶湖の 水は きれいですか。  
…いいえ、きれいじゃ ありません。…No, it isn't. Is the water of Lake Biwa clean?

### 3. な-adj な N い-adj (~い) N

An adjective is put before a noun to modify it. A な-adjective needs な before a noun.

- ⑦ ワット先生は 親切な 先生です。 Mr. Watt is a kind teacher.  
⑧ 富士山は 高い 山です。 Mt. Fuji is a high mountain.

## 4. とても／あまり

とても and あまり are adverbs of degree. Both come before the adjectives they are modifying.

とても is used in affirmative sentences, and means “very.” あまり is used in negative sentences. あまり and a negative form mean “not very.”

- ⑨ ペキンは とても 寒いです。

Beijing is very cold.

- ⑩ これは とても 有名な 映画です。

This is a very famous movie.

- ⑪ シャンハイは あまり 寒くないです。

Shanghai is not very cold.

- ⑫ さくら大学は あまり 有名な 大学じゃ ありません。

Sakura University is not a very famous university.

## 5. Nは どうですか

This question is used to ask an impression or an opinion about a thing, place or person, etc., that the listener has experienced, visited or met.

- ⑬ 日本の 生活は どうですか。 How is the life in Japan?  
…楽しいです。 …It's enjoyable.

## 6. N<sub>1</sub>は どんな N<sub>2</sub>ですか

When the speaker wants the listener to describe or explain N<sub>1</sub>, this question pattern is used. N<sub>2</sub> denotes the category N<sub>1</sub> belongs to. The interrogative どんな is always followed by a noun.

- ⑭ 奈良は どんな 町ですか。 What kind of town is Nara?  
…古い 町です。 …It's an old town.

## 7. S<sub>1</sub>が、 S<sub>2</sub>

が is a conjunctive particle, meaning “but.” It is used to link sentences.

- ⑮ 日本の 食べ物は おいしいですが、 高いです。  
Japanese food is good, but expensive.

## 8. どれ

This interrogative is used to ask the listener to choose or designate one from more than two things concretely shown or named.

- ⑯ ミラーさんの 傘は どれですか。 Which is Mr. Miller's umbrella?  
…あの 青い 傘です。 …That blue one is.

# Lesson 9

## I. Vocabulary

|          |        |   |
|----------|--------|---|
| わかります    |        | understand                                  |
| あります     |        | have  |
| すき[な]    | 好き[な]  | like  |
| きらい[な]   | 嫌い[な]  | dislike                                     |
| じょうず[な]  | 上手[な]  | good at                                     |
| へた[な]    | 下手[な]  | poor at                                     |
| りょうり     | 料理     | dish (cooked food), cooking                 |
| のみもの     | 飲み物    | drinks                                      |
| スポーツ     |        | sport (~をします: play sports)                  |
| やきゅう     | 野球     | baseball (~をします: play baseball)             |
| ダンス      |        | dance (~をします: dance)                        |
| おんがく     | 音楽     | music                                       |
| うた       | 歌      | song  |
| クラシック    |        | classical music                             |
| ジャズ      |        | jazz  |
| コンサート    |        | concert                                     |
| カラオケ     |        | karaoke                                     |
| かぶき      | 歌舞伎    | Kabuki (traditional Japanese musical drama) |
| え        | 絵      | picture, drawing                            |
| じ        | 字      | letter, character                           |
| かんじ      | 漢字     | Chinese characters                          |
| ひらがな     |        | Hiragana script                             |
| かたかな     |        | Katakana script                             |
| ローマじ     | ローマ字   | the Roman alphabet                          |
| こまかい おかね | 細かい お金 | small change                                |
| チケット     |        | ticket                                      |
| じかん      | 時間     | time  |
| ようじ      | 用事     | something to do, errand                     |
| やくそく     | 約束     | appointment, promise                        |

|          |      |                          |
|----------|------|--------------------------|
| ごしゅじん    | ご主人  | (someone else's) husband |
| おっと／しゅじん | 夫／主人 | (my) husband             |
| おくさん     | 奥さん  | (someone else's) wife    |
| つま／かない   | 妻／家内 | (my) wife                |
| こども      | 子ども  | child                    |

|      |       |                                  |
|------|-------|----------------------------------|
| よく   |       | well, much                       |
| だいたい |       | mostly, roughly                  |
| たくさん |       | many, much                       |
| すこし  | 少し    | a little, a few                  |
| ぜんぜん | 全然    | not at all (used with negatives) |
| はやく  | 早く、速く | early, quickly, fast             |
| ～から  |       | because ~                        |
| どうして |       | why                              |

ざんねんです[ね]。残念です[ね]。 I'm sorry (to hear that)./That's a pity.  
すみません。 I am sorry.

## ◀会話▶

61

|               |   |
|---------------|---|
| もしもし          | hello (used on the phone)   |
| ああ            | oh  |
| いっしょに いかがですか。 | Won't you join me (us)?   |
| [～は] ちょっと……。  | [～] is a bit difficult. (an euphemism used when declining an invitation)  |
| ダメですか。        | So you cannot (come)?   |
| また 今度 お願いします。 | Please ask me again some other time.<br>(used when refusing an invitation indirectly, considering someone's feelings) |



小澤 征爾

famous Japanese conductor (1935 - )

## **II. Translation**

### **Sentence Patterns**

1. I like Italian cuisine..
2. I understand Japanese a little.
3. Today is my child's birthday, so I will go home early.

### **Example Sentences**

1. Do you like alcohol?  
…No, I don't.
2. What kind of sports do you like?  
…I like soccer.
3. Is Ms. Karina good at drawing pictures?  
…Yes, she is very good at it.
4. Do you understand Indonesian, Mr. Tanaka?  
…No, I do not understand it at all.
5. Do you have any small change?  
…No, I don't.
6. Do you read newspapers every morning?  
…No, as I don't have the time, I don't.
7. Why did you go home early yesterday?  
…Because I had something to do.

### **Conversation**

#### **That's too bad**

- Miller: Hello. This is Miller.
- Kimura: It's you, Mr. Miller. Good evening. How are you?
- Miller: Fine. Thank you.
- Well, Ms. Kimura. How would you like to go to a concert by Seiji Ozawa?
- Kimura: That sounds nice. When will it be?
- Miller: It's on Friday night of next week.
- Kimura: Friday?
- Friday's a bit difficult.
- Miller: So you can't come?
- Kimura: I have arranged to meet a friend on Friday night.
- Miller: You have. I'm sorry to hear that.
- Kimura: I am, too. Please invite me again some other time.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 音楽・スポーツ・映画

#### MUSIC, SPORTS & MOVIES

##### 音楽 Music



|        |                                    |
|--------|------------------------------------|
| ポップス   | pop                                |
| ロック    | rock                               |
| ジャズ    | jazz                               |
| ラテン    | Latin American music               |
| クラシック  | classical music                    |
| 民謡     | folk music                         |
| 演歌     | traditional Japanese popular songs |
| ミュージカル | musical                            |
| オペラ    | opera                              |

##### 映画 Film



|          |                               |
|----------|-------------------------------|
| S F      | SF film                       |
| ホラー      | horror film                   |
| アニメ      | animated film                 |
| ドキュメンタリー | documentary film              |
| 恋愛       | romantic film                 |
| ミステリー    | mystery film                  |
| 文芸       | movie based on a classic work |
| 戦争       | war film                      |
| アクション    | action film                   |
| 喜劇       | comedy film                   |

##### スポーツ Sports



|          |                |         |                  |
|----------|----------------|---------|------------------|
| ソフトボール   | softball       | 野球      | baseball         |
| サッカー     | soccer         | 卓球／ピンポン | ping-pong        |
| ラグビー     | rugby football | 相撲      | sumo             |
| バレーボール   | volleyball     | 柔道      | judo             |
| バスケットボール | basketball     | 剣道      | Japanese fencing |
| テニス      | tennis         | 水泳      | swimming         |
| ボーリング    | bowling        |         |                  |
| スキー      | skiing         |         |                  |
| スケート     | skating        |         |                  |

## IV. Grammar Explanation

1. Nが あります／わかります  
Nが 好きです／嫌いです／上手です／下手です

The object of a transitive verb is marked with を. However, objects of the verbs あります and わかります are marked with が.

Such adjectives as 好きです, きらいです, じょうずです and へたです require objects, and these are marked with が, too. The verbs and adjectives whose objects are marked with が are those kinds that describe preference, ability, possession and the like.

- ①わたしは イタリア料理が 好きです。 I like Italian food.  
②わたしは 日本語が わかります。 I understand Japanese.  
③わたしは 車が あります。 I have a car.

### 2. どんな N

Other than the usage you learned in Lesson 8, どんな is also used to ask the listener to name one from a group which the noun after どんな denotes.

- ④ どんな スポーツが 好きですか。 What sports do you like?  
…サッカーが 好きです。 …I like football.

### 3. よく／だいたい／たくさん／少し／あまり／全然

These adverbs are put before verbs when they modify them. The following is a summary of their usage.

| degree           | adverb + affirmative                | adverb + negative         |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| high<br>↓<br>low | よく わかります<br>だいたい わかります<br>すこし わかります |                           |
|                  |                                     | あまり わかりません<br>ぜんぜん わかりません |

| amount              | adverb + affirmative  | adverb + negative       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| large<br>↓<br>small | たくさん あります<br>すこし あります | あまり ありません<br>ぜんぜん ありません |

- ⑤ 英語がよくわかります。 I understand English very well.  
 ⑥ 英語が少しわかります。 I understand English a little.  
 ⑦ 英語があまりわかりません。 I don't understand English so well.  
 ⑧ お金がたくさんあります。 I have a lot of money.  
 ⑨ お金が全然ありません。 I don't have any money.

[Note] すこし and ぜんぜん can also modify adjectives.

- ⑩ ここは少し寒いです。 It's a little cold here.  
 ⑪ あの映画は全然おもしろくないです。 That movie is not interesting at all.

#### 4. **S<sub>1</sub>から、S<sub>2</sub>**

から connects two sentences together to denote a causal relationship. S<sub>1</sub> is the reason for S<sub>2</sub>.

- ⑫ 時間がありませんから、新聞を読みません。  
 Because I don't have time, I don't read the newspaper.

You can also state S<sub>2</sub> first and add the reason after it.

- ⑬ 毎朝新聞を読みますか。  
 …いいえ、読みません。時間がありませんから。  
 Do you read a newspaper every morning?  
 …No, I don't. Because I have no time.

#### 5. どうして

The interrogative どうして is used to ask a reason. The answer needs から at the end.

- ⑭ どうして朝新聞を読みませんか。  
 …時間がありませんから。  
 Why don't you read a newspaper in the morning?  
 …Because I don't have time.

The question どうしてですか is also used to ask the reason for what the other person has said.

- ⑮ きょうは早く帰ります。 I'll go home early today.  
 …どうしてですか?  
 子どもの誕生日ですから。 Because today's my child's birthday.

# Lesson 10

## I. Vocabulary

います

exist, be (referring to animate things)  
exist, be (referring to inanimate things)

あります

いろいろ[な]

various

おとこのひと

男の 人

man

おんなのひと

女の 人

woman

おとこのこ

男の 子

boy

おんなのこ

女の 子

girl

いぬ

犬

dog

ねこ

猫

cat

き

木

tree, wood

もの

物

thing

フィルム

電池

film

でんち

箱

battery

はこ

スイッチ

switch

れいぞうこ

冷蔵庫

refrigerator

テーブル

table

ベッド

bed

たな

棚

shelf

ドア

door

まど

窓

window

ポスト

mailbox, postbox

ビル

building

こうえん

公園

park

きっさてん

喫茶店

coffee shop

ほんや

本屋

bookstore

～や

～屋

~ store

のりば

乗り場

a fixed place to catch taxis, trains, etc.

けん

県

prefecture

|     |    |                       |
|-----|----|-----------------------|
| うえ  | 上  | on, above, over       |
| した  | 下  | under, below, beneath |
| まえ  | 前  | front, before         |
| うしろ |    | back, behind          |
| みぎ  | 右  | right [side]          |
| ひだり | 左  | left [side]           |
| なか  | 中  | in, inside            |
| そと  | 外  | outside               |
| となり | 隣  | next, next door       |
| ちかく | 近く | near, vicinity        |
| あいだ | 間  | between, among        |

～や ～[など]

~, ~, and so on

いちばん ～

the most ~ (いちばん うえ: the top)

ーだんめ

一段目

the -th shelf (だん is the counter for shelves)

## ◆会話◆

[どうも] すみません。

Thank you.

チリソース

chili sauce

奥

the back

スパイス・コーナー

spice corner



とうきょう  
東京ディズニーランド

Tokyo Disneyland

ユニユーヤ・ストア

fictitious supermarket

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. Ms. Sato is over there.
2. There is a photo on the desk.
3. My family is in New York.
4. Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.

### Example Sentences

- 10
1. You see that man over there. Who is that?  
…He is Mr. Matsumoto of IMC.
  2. Is there a telephone near here?  
…Yes, it is over there.
  3. Who is in the garden?  
…Nobody is. There is a cat.
  4. What is there in the box?  
…There are old letters and photos and so on.
  5. Where is Mr. Miller?  
…He is in the meeting room.
  6. Where is the post office?  
…It is near the station. It is in front of the bank.

### Conversation

#### Do you have chili sauce in this store?

Miller: Excuse me. Where is Yunyu-ya Store?

Woman: Yunyu-ya Store?

Miller: You see that white building over there?

Woman: The store is in that building.

Miller: I see. Thank you.

Woman: Not at all.

---

Miller: Excuse me, do you have chili sauce?

Shop assistant: Yes.

Miller: There is a spice corner on the right-hand side at the back.

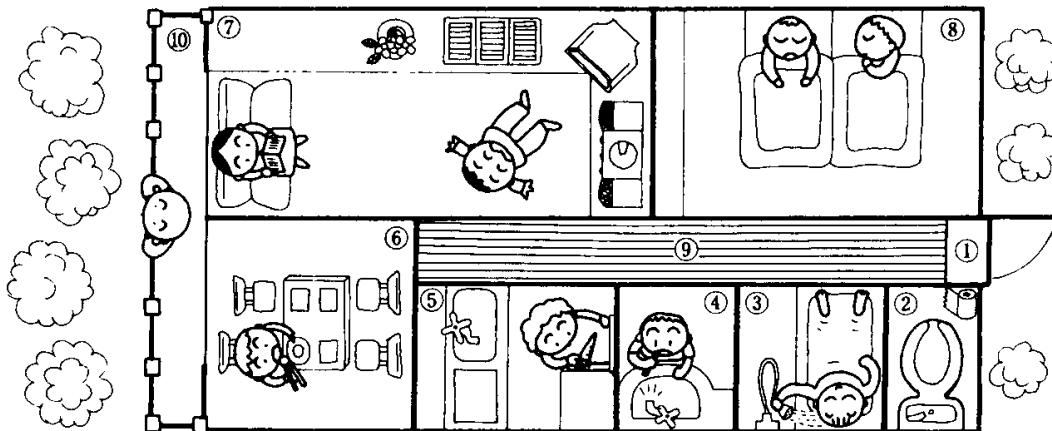
Miller: Chili sauce is on the second rack from the bottom.

Miller: I see. Thanks.

### III. Reference Words & Information

うちの中 なか

INSIDE THE HOUSE



10

- ① 玄関
- ② トイレ
- ③ 風呂場
- ④ 洗面所
- ⑤ 台所

entrance hall  
toilet  
bathroom  
washroom  
kitchen

- ⑥ 食堂
- ⑦ 居間
- ⑧ 寝室
- ⑨ 廊下
- ⑩ ベランダ

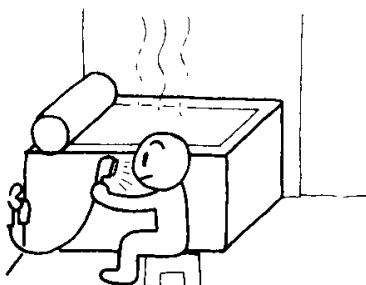
dining room  
living room  
bedroom  
hallway  
balcony

69

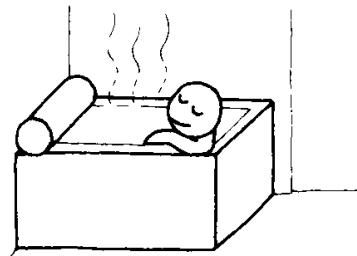


#### How to Use a Japanese Bath

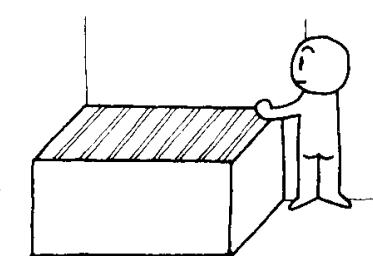
- ① Wash and rinse yourself in the tiled area before getting in the bath.



- ② Soap and shampoo should never be used in the bath. The bath is for soaking and relaxing.

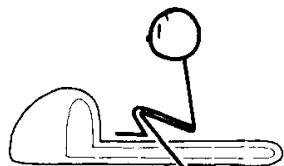


- ③ When you get out of the bath, you don't drain the water as someone else may wish to use it. Put a cover on the bath.



#### How to Use the Toilet

Japanese style



Western style



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. [N<sub>1</sub>が あります／います]

This sentence pattern is used to indicate the existence or presence of a thing(s) or person(s). The thing(s) or person(s) in such a sentence is treated as the subject and marked with the particle が.

- 1) あります is used when what is present is inanimate or does not move by itself. Things, plants and places belong in this category.

- ① コンピューターが あります。 There is a computer.  
② 桜が あります。 There are cherry trees.  
③ 公園が あります。 There is a park.

- 2) When what is present is animate and moves by itself, います is used. People and animals belong in this category.

- ④ 男の 人が います。 There is a man.  
⑤ 犬が います。 There is a dog.

### 2. [N<sub>1</sub>(place) に N<sub>2</sub>が あります／います]

- 1) The place where N<sub>2</sub> is present is indicated by the particle に.

- ⑥ わたしの 部屋に 机が あります。 There is a desk in my room.  
⑦ 事務所に ミラーさんが います。 Mr. Miller is in the office.

- 2) You can ask what or who is present at/in the place by using this pattern. The interrogative なに is used for things and だれ is used for persons.

- ⑧ 地下に 何が ありますか。 What is there in the basement?  
…レストランが あります。  
…There are restaurants.  
⑨ 受付に だれが いますか。 Who is at the reception desk?  
…木村さんが います。  
…Ms. Kimura is there.

### 3. [N<sub>1</sub>は・N<sub>2</sub>(place) に あります／います]

- 1) In this sentence pattern, the speaker picks up N<sub>1</sub> as the topic, and explains where it is. The topic should be something or someone that both the speaker and the listener know about. The particle attached to N<sub>1</sub> is not が, which marks the subject, but は, which marks the topic.

- ⑩ 東京ディズニーランドは 千葉県に あります。  
Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture.

- ⑪ ミラーさんは 事務所に います。 Mr. Miller is in the office.

- 2) When you ask where N<sub>1</sub> is, this sentence pattern is used.

- ⑫ 東京ディズニーランドは どこに ありますか。  
…千葉県に あります。  
Where is Tokyo Disneyland?  
…It's in Chiba Prefecture.

- ⑬ ミラーさんは どこに いますか。 Where is Mr. Miller?  
…事務所に います。  
…He's in the office.

[Note] です is sometimes used to replace a verb predicate when the predicate is obvious. The sentence  $N_1$  は  $N_2$ (place) に あります／います can be replaced by the sentence  $N_1$  は  $N_2$ (place) です, which you learned in Lesson 3.

- ⑭ 東京ディズニーランドは どこに ありますか。  
…千葉県です。

Where is Tokyo Disneyland?  
…It's in Chiba Prefecture.

#### 4. $N_1$ (thing/person/place) の $N_2$ (position)

うえ, した, まえ, うしろ, みぎ, ひだり, なか, そと, となり, ちかく and あいだ are nouns denoting position.

- ⑮ 机の 上に 写真が あります。 There is a picture on the desk.  
⑯ 郵便局は 銀行の 隣に あります。 The post office is next to the bank.

[Note] As these are place nouns, not only に but also particles like で can come after them.

- ⑰ 駅の 近くで 友達に 会いました。 I met a friend near the station.

#### 5. $N_1$ や $N_2$

Nouns are connected in coordinate relation by the particle や. While と enumerates all the items, や shows a few representative items. Sometimes など is put after the last noun to explicitly express that there are also some other things of the kind.

- ⑯ 箱の 中に 手紙や 写真が あります。  
There are letters, pictures and so on in the box.  
⑰ 箱の 中に 手紙や 写真などが あります。  
There are letters, pictures and so on in the box.

#### 6. Word (s) ですか

The particle か has the function to confirm. The speaker picks up a word or words he/she wants to confirm and confirms it (them) using this pattern.

- ㉐ すみません。ユニューヤ・ストアは どこですか。  
…ユニューヤ・ストアですか。あの ビルの 中です。  
Excuse me, but where is Yunyu-ya Store?  
…Yunyu-ya Store? It's in that building.

#### 7. チリソースは ありませんか

The expression チリソースは ありませんか is found in the conversation of this lesson. By using the negative form ありませんか instead of ありますか, you can be indirect and polite, showing that you are prepared for a negative answer.

# Lesson 11

## I. Vocabulary

|          |                                   |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| います      | have [a child]                    |
| [こどもが～]  | [子どもが～]                           |
| います      | stay, be [in Japan]               |
| [にほんに～]  | [日本に～]                            |
| かかります    | take (referring to time or money) |
| やすみます    | take a day off [work]             |
| [かいしゃを～] | [会社を～]                            |

|      |    |                                 |
|------|----|---------------------------------|
| ひとつ  | 1つ | one (used when counting things) |
| ふたつ  | 2つ | two                             |
| みっつ  | 3つ | three                           |
| よっつ  | 4つ | four                            |
| いっつ  | 5つ | five                            |
| むっつ  | 6つ | six                             |
| ななつ  | 7つ | seven                           |
| やつ   | 8つ | eight                           |
| ここいつ | 9つ | nine                            |
| とお   | 10 | ten                             |
| いくつ  |    | how many                        |

|     |    |             |
|-----|----|-------------|
| ひとり | 1人 | one person  |
| ふたり | 2人 | two persons |
| ーにん | ー人 | — people    |

|     |    |                                    |
|-----|----|------------------------------------|
| ーだい | ー台 | (counter for machines, cars, etc.) |
| ーまい | ー枚 | (counter for paper, stamps, etc.)  |
| ーかい | ー回 | — times                            |

|          |                  |
|----------|------------------|
| りんご      | apple            |
| みかん      | mandarin orange  |
| サンドイッチ   | sandwich         |
| カレー[ライス] | curry [and rice] |
| アイスクリーム  | ice cream        |

|      |    |                  |
|------|----|------------------|
| きって  | 切手 | postage stamp    |
| はがき  |    | post card        |
| ふうとう | 封筒 | envelope         |
| そくたつ | 速達 | special delivery |
| かきとめ | 書留 | registered mail  |

|                   |             |  |
|-------------------|-------------|--|
| エアメール<br>(こうくうびん) |             | airmail  |
| ふなびん              | (航空便)<br>船便 | sea mail   |
| りょうしん             | 両親          | parents  |
| きょうだい             | 兄弟          | brothers and sisters   |
| あに                | 兄           | (my) elder brother   |
| おにいさん             | お兄さん        | (someone else's) elder brother   |
| あね                | 姉           | (my) elder sister  |
| おねえさん             | お姉さん        | (someone else's) elder sister  |
| おとうと              | 弟           | (my) younger brother   |
| おとうとさん            | 弟さん         | (someone else's) younger brother   |
| いもうと              | 妹           | (my) younger sister  |
| いもうとさん            | 妹さん         | (someone else's) younger sister  |
| がいこく              | 外国          | foreign country  |
| ーじかん              | ー時間         | — hours  |
| ーしゅうかん            | ー週間         | — weeks  |
| ーかげつ              | ーか月         | — months   |
| ーねん               | ー年          | — years  |
| ~ぐらい              |             | about ~  |
| どのくらい             |             | how long   |
| ぜんぶで              | 全部で         | in total   |
| みんな               |             | all, everything  |
| ~だけ               |             | only ~   |
| いらっしゃいませ。         |             | Welcome./May I help you? (a greeting to a customer or a guest entering a shop, etc.) |

## ◀会話▶

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| いい [お]天気ですね。 | Nice weather, isn't it?                    |
| お出かけですか。     | Are you going out?                         |
| ちょっと ~まで。    | I'm just going to ~.                       |
| 行って いらっしゃい。  | So long. (lit. Go and come back.)          |
| 行って まいります。   | So long. (lit. I'm going and coming back.) |
| それから         | and, furthermore                           |



オーストラリア

Australia

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. There are seven tables in the meeting room.
2. I will stay in Japan for one year.

### Example Sentences

1. How many apples did you buy?  
...I bought four.
2. Give me five 80-yen stamps and two postcards, please.  
...Certainly. That's 500 yen in all.
3. Are there foreign teachers at Fuji University?  
...Yes, there are three. They are all Americans.
4. How many people are there in your family?  
...There are five. My parents, my elder sister, my elder brother and me.
5. How many times a week do you play tennis?  
...I play it about twice a week.
6. How long did you study Spanish, Mr. Tanaka?  
...I studied it for three months.  
Only three months? You speak it very well.
7. How long does it take from Osaka to Tokyo by Shinkansen?  
...It takes two and a half hours.

### Conversation

#### Please send this by sea mail

Janitor: Nice weather, isn't it? Are you going out?  
Wang: Yes, I am going to the post office.  
Janitor: Really? See you later.  
Wang: See you.

---

Wang: I would like to send this by special delivery.  
Post office clerk: Sure. To Australia? That's 370 yen.  
Wang: And also this parcel.  
Post office clerk: By sea mail or airmail?  
Wang: How much is sea mail?  
Post office clerk: 500 yen.  
Wang: How long will it take?  
Post office clerk: It will take about one month.  
Wang: Well, please send it by sea mail.

### III. Reference Words & Information

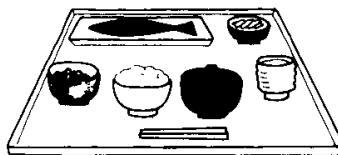
#### メニュー MENU

定食

ランチ

set meal

set meal in the western style



天どん

a bowl of rice with fried fish and vegetables

親子どん

a bowl of rice with chicken and egg

牛どん

a bowl of rice with beef

焼肉

grilled meat

野菜いため

sautéed vegetables

漬物

pickles

みそ汁

miso soup

おにぎり

riceball



てんぷら

fried seafood and vegetables  
vinegared rice with raw fish

うどん

Japanese noodles made from wheat flour

そば

Japanese noodles made from buckwheat flour

ラーメン

Chinese noodles in soup with meat and vegetables

焼きそば

Chinese stir-fried noodles with pork and vegetables

お好み焼き

a type of pancake grilled with meat, vegetables and egg

カレーライス

curry and rice

ハンバーグ

hamburg steak

コロッケ

croquette

えびフライ

fried shrimp

フライドチキン

fried chicken

サラダ

salad

スープ

soup

スペaghetti

spaghetti

ピザ

pizza

ハンバーガー

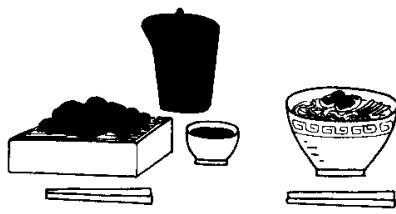
hamburger

サンドウィッチ

sandwich

トースト

toast



コーヒー

coffee

紅茶

black tea

ココア

cocoa

ジュース

juice

コーラ

cola

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Saying numbers

#### 1) ひとつ, ふたつ……とお

These words are used to count things up to ten. Eleven and higher are counted by using the numbers themselves.

#### 2) Counter Suffixes

When counting some sorts of things or expressing the quantity of things, counter suffixes are attached after the numbers.

一人      number of people except for one and two

ひとり (1人) and ふたり (2人) are used for one and two.

4人 (four people) is read よにん.

一台      number of machines or vehicles like cars and bicycles

一枚      number of thin or flat things such as paper, dishes, shirts, CDs, etc.

一回      times

一分      minutes

一時      hours

一日      days

The number of days takes the counter suffix にち. However, from two to ten, the same words as used for dates are used. (“One day” is 1にち, “two days” is ふつか, ……, “ten days” is とおか.)

一週間      weeks

一ヶ月      months

一年      years

Details and other counter suffixes are listed in the appendices.

#### 3) Usage

Quantifiers (numbers with counter suffixes) are usually put before the verbs they modify. However, this is not always the case with length of time.

①りんごを 4つ 買いました。 We bought four apples.

②外国人の 学生が 2人 います。 There are two foreign students.

③国で 2か月 日本語を 勉強しました。

I studied Japanese for two months in my country.

#### 4) Interrogatives

(1)いくつ is used to ask how many about things which are counted as ひとつ, ふたつ, …….

④みかんを いくつ 買いましたか。  
…8つ 買いました。

How many mandarin oranges did you buy?

…I bought eight.

(2) なん is used with a counter suffix to ask how many.

- ⑤ この 会社に 外国人が 何人 いますか。  
… 5人 います。

How many foreigners are there in this company?

… There are five.

- ⑥ 每晩 何時間 日本語を 勉強しますか。  
… 2時間 勉強します。

How many hours do you study Japanese every night?

… Two hours.

(3) どのくらい is used to ask the length of time something takes. You can use various units of time in the answer.

- ⑦ どのくらい 日本語を 勉強しましたか。  
… 3年 勉強しました。

How long did you study Japanese?

… I studied it for three years.

- ⑧ 大阪から 東京まで どのくらい かかりますか。  
… 新幹線で 2時間半 かかります。

How long does it take from Osaka to Tokyo?

… It takes two and a half hours by Shinkansen.

11

77

## 5) ぐらい

ぐらい is added after quantifiers to mean “about.”

- ⑨ 学校に 先生が 30人ぐらい います。

There are about thirty teachers in our school.

- ⑩ 15分ぐらい かかります。 It takes about fifteen minutes.

## 2. Quantifier (period) に 一回 V

With this expression you can say how often you do something.

- ⑪ 1ヶ月に 2回 映画を 見ます。 I go to see movies twice a month.

## 3. Quantifierだけ / Nだけ

だけ means “only.” It is added after quantifiers or nouns to express that there is no more or nothing (no one) else.

- ⑫ パワー電気に 外国人の 社員が 1人だけ います。

There is only one foreign employee in Power Electric.

- ⑬ 休みは 日曜日だけです。 I only have Sundays off.

# Lesson 12

## I. Vocabulary

|         |          |                        |
|---------|----------|------------------------|
| かんたん[な] | 簡単[な]    | easy, simple           |
| ちかい     | 近い       | near                   |
| とおい     | 遠い       | far                    |
| はやい     | 速い、早い    | fast, early            |
| おそい     | 遅い       | slow, late             |
| おおい     | 多い       | many [people], much    |
| [ひとが～]  | [人が～]    |                        |
| すくない    | 少ない      | few [people], a little |
| [ひとが～]  | [人が～]    |                        |
| あたたかい   | 暖かい、温かい  | warm                   |
| すずしい    | 涼しい      | cool                   |
| あまい     | 甘い       | sweet                  |
| からい     | 辛い       | hot (taste), spicy     |
| おもい     | 重い       | heavy                  |
| かるい     | 軽い       | light                  |
| いい      |          | prefer [coffee]        |
|         | [コーヒーが～] |                        |
| きせつ     | 季節       | season                 |
| はる      | 春        | spring                 |
| なつ      | 夏        | summer                 |
| あき      | 秋        | autumn, fall           |
| ふゆ      | 冬        | winter                 |
| てんき     | 天気       | weather                |
| あめ      | 雨        | rain, rainy            |
| ゆき      | 雪        | snow, snowy            |
| くもり     | 曇り       | cloudy                 |
| ホテル     |          | hotel                  |
| くうこう    | 空港       | airport                |
| うみ      | 海        | sea, ocean             |
| せかい     | 世界       | world                  |

|        |       |   |
|--------|-------|---|
| パーティー  |       | party (~をします: give a party)                             |
| [お]まつり | [お]祭り | festival  |
| しけん    | 試験    | examination   |
| すきやき   | すき焼き  | sukiyaki (beef and vegetable hot pot)                   |
| さしみ    | 刺身    | sashimi (sliced raw fish)                               |
| [お]すし  |       | sushi (vinegared rice topped with raw fish)             |
| てんぶら   |       | tempura (seafood and vegetables deep fried in batter)   |
| いけばな   | 生け花   | flower arrangement (~をします: practice flower arrangement) |
| もみじ    | 紅葉    | maple, red leaves of autumn                             |
| どちら    |       | which one (between two things)                          |
| どちらも   |       | both  |
| ずっと    |       | by far  |
| はじめて   | 初めて   | for the first time                                      |

## ◀会話▶

|         |                 |
|---------|-----------------|
| ただいま。   | I'm home.       |
| お帰りなさい。 | Welcome home.   |
| すごいですね。 | That's amazing. |
| でも      | but             |
| 疲れました。  | (I'm) tired.    |

~~~~~

## 祇園祭

|        |                                                      |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------|
| ホンコン   | the Gion Festival, the most famous festival in Kyoto |
| シンガポール | Hong Kong (香港)                                       |
| まいにちや  | Singapore                                            |
| 毎日屋    | fictitious supermarket                               |
| ABCストア | fictitious supermarket                               |
| ジャパン   | fictitious supermarket                               |

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. It was rainy yesterday.
2. It was cold yesterday.
3. Hokkaido is bigger than Kyushu.
4. I like summer best of the year.

### Example Sentences

1. Was Kyoto quiet?  
…No, it wasn’t.
2. Was the trip enjoyable?  
…Yes, it was very enjoyable.
3. Was the weather good?  
…No, it wasn’t so good.
4. How was the party yesterday?  
…It was very lively. I met various people.
5. Are there more people in Tokyo than in New York?  
…Yes, a lot more.
6. Which is the faster way to get to the airport, by bus or by train?  
…The train is faster.
7. Which do you prefer, the sea or the mountains?  
…I like both.
8. What do you like best of all Japanese dishes?  
…I like tempura best.

### Conversation

#### How was the Festival?

- Miller: Hello. (I’m home.)  
Janitor: Hello. (Welcome home.)  
Miller: This is a souvenir from Kyoto.  
Janitor: Thank you.  
Miller: How was the Gion Festival?  
Miller: It was very interesting.  
Miller: There were a lot of foreign visitors.  
Janitor: The Gion Festival is the most famous of all the festivals in Kyoto.  
Miller: Is that so?  
Janitor: Did you take photos?  
Miller: Yes, I took about a hundred photos.  
Janitor: Amazing!  
Miller: Yes. But it made me a bit tired.

### III. Reference Words & Information

祭りと名所

FESTIVALS & PLACES OF NOTE

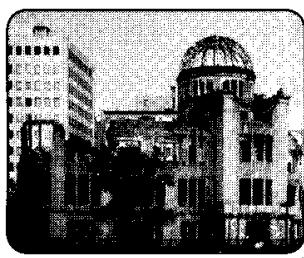
ろくおんじ きんかくし きんかく  
鹿苑寺 (金閣寺) 金閣



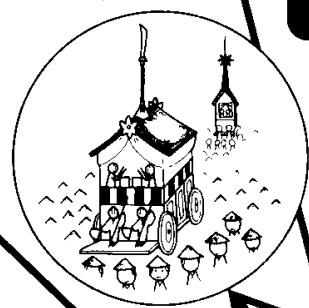
ひめじしき  
姫路城



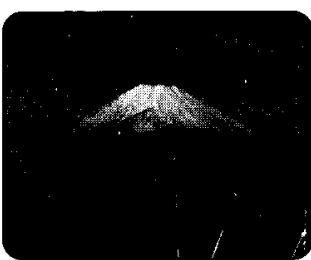
原爆ドーム



ぎ おんまつり  
祇園祭



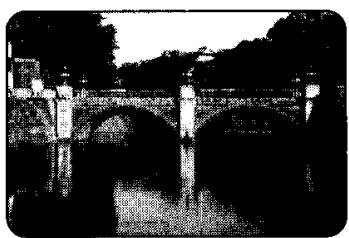
富士山



とうしょうぐう  
東照宮



ごうご  
皇居



日光

とうきょう

広島

姫路

大阪

京都

奈良

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Past tense of noun sentences and な-adjective sentences

|             | non-past (present/future) |           |                 | past       |           |                    |
|-------------|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------|------------|-----------|--------------------|
|             | N<br>な-adj                | あめ<br>しづか | です              | N<br>な-adj | あめ<br>しづか | でした                |
| affirmative |                           |           |                 |            |           |                    |
| negative    | N<br>な-adj                | あめ<br>しづか | じゃありません<br>(では) | N<br>な-adj | あめ<br>しづか | じゃありませんでした<br>(では) |

① きのうは 雨でした。 It was rainy yesterday.

② きのうの 試験は 簡単じゃ ありませんでした。

Yesterday's exam was not easy.

### 2. Past tense of い-adjective sentences

|             | non-past (present/future) | past      |
|-------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| affirmative | あついです                     | あつかったです   |
| negative    | あつくないです                   | あつくなかったです |

③ きのうは 暑かったです。 It was hot yesterday.

④ きのうの パーティーは あまり 楽しくなかったです。

I didn't enjoy yesterday's party very much.

### 3. **N<sub>1</sub> は N<sub>2</sub> より adjective です**

This sentence pattern describes the quality and/or state of N<sub>1</sub> in comparison with N<sub>2</sub>.

⑤ この 車は あの 車より 大きいです。

This car is bigger than that car.

### 4. **N<sub>1</sub> と N<sub>2</sub> と どちらが adjective ですか …N<sub>1</sub> / N<sub>2</sub> の ほうが adjective です**

The question asks the listener to choose between two items (N<sub>1</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>). The interrogative used is always どちら if the comparison is made between two items.

⑥ サッカーと 野球と どちらが おもしろいですか。

…サッカーの ほうが おもしろいです。

Which is more interesting, baseball or football?

…Football is.

- ⑦ ミラーさんと サントスさんと どちらが テニスが **上手**ですか。  
Who is a better tennis player, Mr. Miller or Mr. Santos?
- ⑧ 北海道と 大阪と どちらが **涼しい**ですか。  
Which is cooler, Hokkaido or Osaka?
- ⑨ 春と 秋と どちらが **好き**ですか。  
Which do you like better, spring or autumn?

5.

N<sub>1</sub> [の 中]で { 何  
どこ  
だれ  
いつ } が いちばん **adjective** ですか  
… N<sub>2</sub> が いちばん **adjective** です

This question pattern is used to ask the listener to choose something that is the most “adjective.” The choice is made from the group or category denoted by N<sub>1</sub>. The interrogative used is decided by the kind of category from which the choice is made.

- ⑩ 日本料理[の 中]で 何が いちばん おいしいですか。  
…てんぶらが いちばん おいしいです。  
Among Japanese dishes, what is the most delicious?  
…Tempura is.
- ⑪ ヨーロッパで どこが いちばん よかったですか。  
…スイスが いちばん よかったです。  
In Europe, where did you like best?  
…I liked Switzerland best.
- ⑫ 家族で だれが いちばん 背が 高いですか。  
…弟が いちばん 背が 高いです。  
Who is the tallest of your family?  
…My younger brother is.
- ⑬ 1年で いつが いちばん 寒いですか。  
…2月が いちばん 寒いです。  
When is the coldest time of a year?  
…It's coldest in February.

[Note] When the subject is an interrogative, the particle が is used. (See Lesson 10, なにが ありますか / だれが いますか.)

When the subject of an adjective sentence is questioned, が is attached to the interrogative in the same way.

# Lesson 13

## I. Vocabulary

|           |         |                                                   |
|-----------|---------|---------------------------------------------------|
| あそびます     | 遊びます    | enjoy oneself, play                               |
| およぎます     | 泳ぎます    | swim                                              |
| むかえます     | 迎えます    | go to meet, welcome                               |
| つかれます     | 疲れます    | get tired                                         |
| だします      | 出します    | send [a letter]                                   |
| [てがみを～]   | [手紙を～]  |                                                   |
| はいります     | 入ります    | enter [a coffee shop]                             |
| [きっさてんに～] | [喫茶店に～] |                                                   |
| でます       | 出ます     | go out [of a coffee shop]                         |
| [きっさてんを～] | [喫茶店を～] |                                                   |
| けっこんします   | 結婚します   | marry, get married                                |
| かいものします   | 買い物します  | do shopping                                       |
| しょくじします   | 食事します   | have a meal, dine                                 |
| さんぽします    | 散歩します   | take a walk [in a park]                           |
| [こうえんを～]  | [公園を～]  |                                                   |
| たいへん[な]   | 大変[な]   | hard, tough, severe, awful                        |
| ほしい       | 欲しい     | want (something)                                  |
| さびしい      | 寂しい     | lonely                                            |
| ひろい       | 広い      | wide, spacious                                    |
| せまい       | 狭い      | narrow, small (room, etc.)                        |
| しやくしょ     | 市役所     | municipal office, city hall                       |
| プール       |         | swimming pool                                     |
| かわ        | 川       | river                                             |
| けいざい      | 経済      | economy                                           |
| びじゅつ      | 美術      | fine arts                                         |
| つり        | 釣り      | fishing (~をします: fish, angle)                      |
| スキー       |         | skiing (~をします: ski)                               |
| かいぎ       | 会議      | meeting, conference<br>(～をします: hold a conference) |
| とうろく      | 登録      | registration (~をします: register)                    |

|              |    |                                                               |
|--------------|----|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| しゅうまつ        | 週末 | weekend                                                       |
| ～ごろ          |    | about (time)                                                  |
| なにか          | 何か | something                                                     |
| どこか          |    | somewhere, some place                                         |
| おなかが すきました。  |    | (I'm) hungry.                                                 |
| おなかが いっぱいです。 |    | (I'm) full.                                                   |
| のどが かわきました。  |    | (I'm) thirsty.                                                |
| そうですね。       |    | I agree with you.                                             |
| そう しましょう。    |    | Let's do that. (used when agreeing with someone's suggestion) |

## ◆会話◆

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| ご注文は？         | May I take your order?        |
| 定食            | set meal                      |
| 牛丼            | bowl of rice topped with beef |
| [少々] お待ちください。 | Please wait [a moment].       |
| 別々に           | separately                    |

ロシア  
つるや  
おはようテレビ

Russia  
fictitious Japanese restaurant  
fictitious TV program

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. I want a personal computer.
2. I want to eat tempura.
3. I will go to France to study cooking.

### Example Sentences

1. What do you want most now?  
…I want a house.
2. Where do you want to go on summer vacation?  
…I want to go to Okinawa.
3. Because I am tired today, I don't want to do anything.  
…Me, too. Today's meeting was tough, wasn't it?
4. What will you do this weekend?  
…I will go to Kobe with my children to see the ships.
5. What did you come to Japan to study?  
…I came here to study economics.
6. Did you go anywhere on winter vacation?  
…Yes, I did.  
Where did you go?  
…I went to Hokkaido to ski.

### Conversation

#### Charge us separately

Yamada: Why, it's already twelve. Shall we go for lunch?

Miller: Sure.

Yamada: Where shall we go?

Miller: Let me see. Today I want to eat Japanese food.

Yamada: Then, let's go to "Tsuru-ya."

---

Waiter: May I take your order?

Miller: I'll have the tempura set lunch.

Yamada: I'll have the gyudon.

Waiter: One tempura set lunch and one gyudon. I'll be right back.

---

Cashier: 1,680 yen altogether, sir.

Miller: Excuse me. Please charge us separately.

Cashier: Right. 980 yen for the tempura set lunch, 700 yen for the gyudon.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 町の中 TOWN

博物館  
美術館  
図書館  
映画館  
動物園  
植物園  
遊園地

お寺  
神社  
教会  
モスク

体育館  
プール  
公園

大使館  
入国管理局

museum  
art museum  
library  
movie theater  
zoo  
botanical garden  
amusement park

Buddhist temple  
Shinto shrine  
Christian church  
Mosque

gymnasium  
swimming pool  
park

embassy  
immigration bureau

市役所  
警察署  
交番  
消防署  
駐車場

大学  
高校  
中学校  
小学校  
幼稚園

肉屋  
パン屋  
魚屋  
酒屋  
八百屋

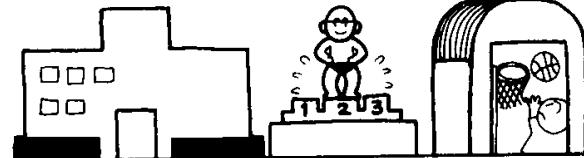
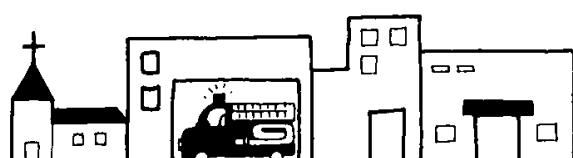
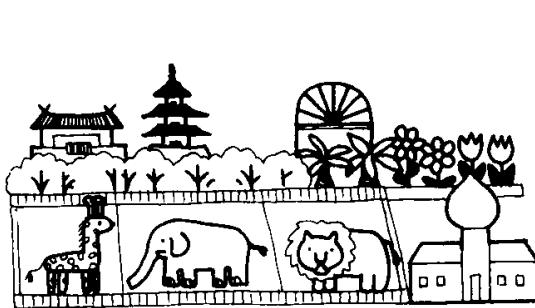
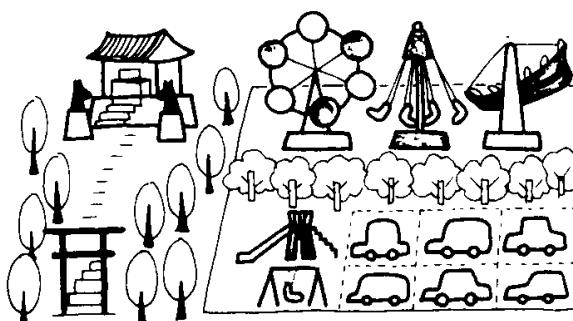
喫茶店  
コンビニ  
スーパー  
デパート

city hall  
police  
police box  
fire station  
parking lot

university  
senior high school  
junior high school  
elementary school  
kindergarten

butcher's shop  
bakery  
fishmonger's  
liquor shop  
vegetable shop

coffee shop  
convenience store  
supermarket  
department store



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Nが欲しいです

This sentence pattern is used to express the speaker's desire to possess or have an object. It can also be used to ask what the listener wants. The object is marked with the particle **が**. **ほしい** is an **い**-adjective.

- |                                                   |                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| ① わたしは 友達 <b>が</b> 欲しいです。                         | I want a friend.                                  |
| ② 今 何 <b>が</b> いちばん 欲しいですか。<br>…車 <b>が</b> 欲しいです。 | What do you want most now?<br>…I want a car most. |
| ③ 子ども <b>が</b> 欲しいですか。<br>…いいえ、欲しくないです。           | Do you want a child?<br>…No, I don't.             |

### 2. Vます-form たいです

#### 1) Verb ます-form

The form of a verb when it is used with **ます** is called the **ます**-form. In the word **かいます**, **かい** is the **ます**-form.

#### 2) Vます-form たいです

This expresses the speaker's desire to do something. It is also used to ask what the listener wants to do. In this expression, as is seen in ⑤ below, the particle **が** can replace the particle **を**. The other particles cannot be replaced by **が**. **Vます-form たい** inflects as an **い**-adjective.

- |                                                          |                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ④ わたしは 沖縄へ 行きたいです。                                       | I want to go to Okinawa.                                            |
| ⑤ わたしは てんぷら <b>を</b> 食べたいです。                             | I want to eat tempura.                                              |
| ⑥ 神戸 <b>で</b> 何 <b>を</b> 買いたいですか。<br>…靴 <b>を</b> 買いたいです。 | What do you want to buy in Kobe?<br>…I want to buy a pair of shoes. |
| ⑦ おなか <b>が</b> 痛いですから、何 <b>も</b> 食べたくないです。               | Because I have a stomachache, I don't want to eat anything.         |

[Note 1] **ほしいです** or **～たいです** cannot be used to describe the third person's desire.

[Note 2] You can neither use **ほしいですか** nor **Vます-form たいですか** when you offer something or invite someone to do something. For example, when you offer a cup of coffee (or invite the listener to have a cup of coffee), you should not say, **コーヒーがほしいですか**, nor should you say **コーヒーをのみたいですか**. Expressions such as **コーヒーはいかがですか** or **コーヒーをのみませんか** should be used.

### 3. **N(place) へ { V ます-form | N }** に 行きます／来ます／帰ります

The purpose for いきます, きます or かれります is expressed using this pattern. The purpose is marked with the particle に. A noun used before に is of the kind denoting an action.

⑧ 神戸へ インド料理を 食べに 行きます。

I'm going to Kobe to eat Indian food.

⑨ 神戸へ 買い物に 行きます。

I'm going to Kobe for shopping.

⑩ 日本へ 美術の 勉強に 来ました。

I came to Japan in order to study art.

[Note] You can also use nouns denoting events such as festivals and concerts before に. In this case, the speaker's purpose is to see or enjoy the event.

⑪ あした 京都の お祭りに 行きます。

I'll go to the festival in Kyoto tomorrow.

### 4. **Nに V／Nを V**

The particle に marks the goal when used with verbs like はいります, のります (get on; see Lesson 16), etc. The particle を marks the starting point or place when used with verbs like でます, おります (get off; see Lesson 16), etc.

⑫ あの 喫茶店に 入りましょう。 Let's go in that coffee shop.

⑬ 7時に うちを 出ます。 I leave my house at 7 o'clock.

### 5. どこか／何か

どこか means anywhere or somewhere. なにか means anything or something.

The particles へ and を can be omitted.

⑭ 冬休みは どこか[へ] 行きましたか。  
…はい、 行きました。

Did you go anywhere in the winter vacation?

…Yes, I did.

⑮ のどが かわきましたから、 何か[を] 飲みたいです。  
I'm thirsty. I want to drink something.

### 6. ご注文

ご is a prefix added to some words to express respect.

⑯ ご注文は? May I have your order?

# Lesson 14

## I. Vocabulary

|                      |       |                     |
|----------------------|-------|---------------------|
| つけます Ⅱ               | 消します  | turn on             |
| けします I               | 開けます  | turn off            |
| あけます Ⅱ               | 閉めます  | open                |
| しめます Ⅱ               | 急ぎます  | close, shut         |
| いそぎます I              | 待ちます  | hurry               |
| まちます I               | 止めます  | wait                |
| とめます Ⅱ               | 曲がります | stop, park          |
| まがります I<br>[みぎへ～]    | [右へ～] | turn [to the right] |
| もちます I               | 持ちます  | hold                |
| とります I               | 取ります  | take, pass          |
| てつだいます I             | 手伝います | help (with a task)  |
| よびます I               | 呼びます  | call                |
| はなします I              | 話します  | speak, talk         |
| みせます Ⅱ               | 見せます  | show                |
| おしえます Ⅱ<br>[じゅうしょを～] | 教えます  | tell [an address]   |
| はじめます Ⅱ              | 始めます  | start, begin        |
| ふります I<br>[あめが～]     | 降ります  | rain                |
| コピーします Ⅲ             | [雨が～] | copy                |

### エアコン

air conditioner

|       |    |          |
|-------|----|----------|
| パスポート |    | passport |
| なまえ   | 名前 | name     |
| じゅうしょ | 住所 | address  |
| ちず    | 地図 | map      |

|     |    |       |
|-----|----|-------|
| しお  | 塩  | salt  |
| さとう | 砂糖 | sugar |

|      |     |                             |
|------|-----|-----------------------------|
| よみかた | 読み方 | how to read, way of reading |
| ～かた  | ～方  | how to ~, way of ~ ing      |

|        |                   |
|--------|-------------------|
| ゆっくり   | slowly, leisurely |
| すぐ     | immediately       |
| また     | again             |
| あとで    | later             |
| もう すこし | a little more     |
| もう ~   | ~ more, another ~ |

|        |                                                     |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| いいですよ。 | Sure./Certainly.                                    |
| さあ     | right (used when encouraging some course of action) |
| あれ？    | Oh! (in surprise or in wonder)                      |

## ◆会話◆

|                   |                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 信号を 右へ 曲がって ください。 | Turn to the right at the signal. |
| まっすぐ              | straight                         |
| これで お願ひします。       | I'd like to pay with this.       |
| お釣り               | change                           |



梅田

name of a town in Osaka

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. Wait a moment, please.
2. Mr. Miller is making a telephone call now.

### Example Sentences

1. Please write your name and address here.  
...Yes.
2. Please show me that shirt.  
...Here you are.  
Do you have one a little bigger?  
...Yes. How about this shirt?
3. Excuse me. Please tell me how to read this kanji?  
...It's "kakitome."
4. It's hot, isn't it? Shall I open the window?  
...Yes, please.
5. Shall I come to the station to pick you up?  
...No, thank you. I will come by taxi.
6. Where is Ms. Sato?  
...She is talking with Mr. Matsumoto in the meeting room.  
Then, I will come again later.

### Conversation

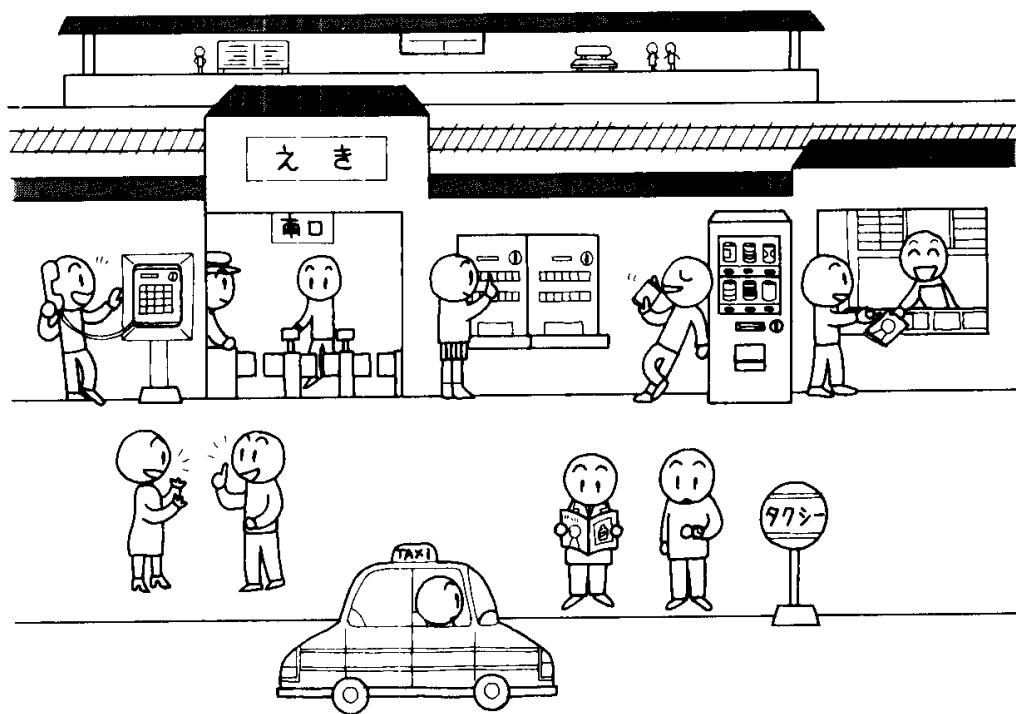
#### To Umeda, please

- Karina: To Umeda, please.  
Driver: Yes.
- 
- Karina: Excuse me. Turn to the right at that traffic light.  
Driver: To the right?  
Karina: Yes.
- 
- Driver: Go straight?  
Karina: Yes, go straight.
- 
- Karina: Stop in front of that flower shop.  
Driver: Yes.  
1,800 yen, please.
- 
- Karina: Here you are.  
Driver: That's 3,200 yen change. Thank you.

### III. Reference Words & Information

## 駅 STATION

|           |                            |        |                                      |
|-----------|----------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| 切符売り場     | ticket office, ticket area | 特急     | super-express train                  |
| 自動券売機     | ticket machine             | 急行     | express train                        |
| 精算機       | fare adjustment machine    | 快速     | rapid service train                  |
| 改札口       | wicket, ticket barrier     | 準急     | semi-express train                   |
| 出口        | exit                       | 普通     | local train                          |
| 入口        | entrance                   | 時刻表    | timetable                            |
| 東口        | east exit                  | ～発     | departing ~                          |
| 西口        | west exit                  | ～着     | arriving at ~                        |
| 南口        | south exit                 | [東京]行き | for [TOKYO]                          |
| 北口        | north exit                 | 定期券    | commutation ticket,<br>commuter pass |
| 中央口       | central exit               | 回数券    | coupon ticket                        |
| [プラット]ホーム | platform                   | 片道     | one way                              |
| 売店        | kiosk                      | 往復     | round trip                           |
| コインロッカー   | coin locker                |        |                                      |
| タクシー乗り場   | taxi stand                 |        |                                      |
| バスターミナル   | bus terminal               |        |                                      |
| バス停       | bus stop                   |        |                                      |



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb conjugation

Verbs in Japanese change their forms, i.e., they conjugate, and they are divided into three groups according to the type of conjugation. Depending on the following phrases, you can make sentences with various meanings.

### 2. Verb groups

#### 1) Group I verbs

In the verbs of this group, the last sound of the ます-form is that of the い-line.  
(See Main Textbook, p. 2, “かなと拍.”)

かきます write のみます drink

#### 2) Group II verbs

In most of the verbs of this group, the last sound of the ます-form is that of the え-line, but in some verbs the last sound of the ます-form is that of the い-line.

たべます eat みせます show みます see

#### 3) Group III verbs

Verbs of this group include します and “noun denoting an action + します” as well as きます.

### 3. Verb て-form

94

The verb form which ends with て or で is called the て-form. How to make the て-form of a verb depends on which group the verb belongs to as explained below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 14, p. 116, 練習 A 1.)

- 1) Group I      Depending on the last sound of the ます-form, the て-form of the verbs of this group is made as shown in the form table. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 14, 練習 A 1.) Note that the て-form of the verb いきます, いって, is an exception.
- 2) Group II     Attach て to the ます-form.
- 3) Group III    Attach て to the ます-form.

### 4. **V て-form ください** Please do...

This sentence pattern is used to ask, instruct or encourage the listener to do something. Naturally, if the listener is one's superior, this expression cannot be used for giving instructions to him/her. The sentences shown below are examples of asking, instructing and encouraging, respectively.

① すみませんが、この 漢字の 読み方を 教えて ください。

Excuse me, could you tell me how to read this kanji, please?

② ここに 住所と 名前を 書いて ください。

Please write your name and address here.

③ ぜひ 遊びに 来て ください。 Please come to my place. (L. 25)

When it is used to ask the listener to do something, すみませんが is often added before Vて-form ください as in ①. This expression is politer than only saying Vて-form ください.

## 5. **Vて-form います** be V-ing

This sentence pattern indicates that a certain action or motion is in progress.

- ④ ミラーさんは 今 電話をかけて います。

Mr. Miller is making a phone call now.

- ⑤ 今 雨が 降って いますか。

…はい、降って います。

…いいえ、降って いません。

Is it raining now?

…Yes, it is.

…No, it is not.

## 6. **Vます-form ましようか** Shall I...?

This expression is used when the speaker is offering to do something for the listener.

- ⑥ A: あしたも 来ましようか。

B: ええ、10時に 来て ください。

Shall I come tomorrow, too?

…Yes, please come at ten.

- ⑦ A: 傘を 貸しましようか。

B: すみません。お願ひします。

Shall I lend you an umbrella?

…Yes, please.

- ⑧ A: 荷物を 持ちましようか。

B: いいえ、けっこうです。

Shall I carry your parcel?

…No, thank you.

In the above example conversations, B demonstrates how to politely ask or instruct someone to do something (⑥), to accept an offer with gratitude (⑦) and to decline an offer politely (⑧).

## 7. **S<sub>1</sub>が、S<sub>2</sub> ..., but...**

- ⑨ 失礼ですが、お名前は？

Excuse me, but may I have your name? (L.1)

- ⑩ すみませんが、塩を 取って ください。Please pass me the salt.

You learned the conjunctive particle が in Lesson 8. In expressions such as しつれいですが or すみませんが, which are used as introductory remarks when speaking to someone, が, losing its original meaning, is used to connect two sentences lightly.

## 8. **Nが V**

When describing a natural phenomenon, the subject is indicated by が.

- ⑪ 雨が 降って います。

It is raining.

# Lesson 15

## I. Vocabulary

|              |           |                  |
|--------------|-----------|------------------|
| たちます I       | 立ちます      | stand up         |
| すわります I      | 座ります      | sit down         |
| つかいます I      | 使います      | use              |
| おきます I       | 置きます      | put              |
| つくります I      | 作ります、造ります | make, produce    |
| うります I       | 売ります      | sell             |
| しります I       | 知ります      | get to know      |
| すみます I       | 住みます      | be going to live |
| けんきゅうします III | 研究します     | do research      |
| しっています       | 知っています    | know             |
| すんでいます       | 住んでいます    | live [in Osaka]  |
| [おおさかに～]     | [大阪に～]    |                  |

|        |     |                            |
|--------|-----|----------------------------|
| しりょう   | 資料  | materials, data            |
| カタログ   |     | catalog                    |
| じこくひょう | 時刻表 | timetable                  |
| ふく     | 服   | clothes                    |
| せいひん   | 製品  | products                   |
| ソフト    |     | software                   |
| せんもん   | 専門  | speciality, field of study |
| はいしゃ   | 歯医者 | dentist, dentist's         |
| とこや    | 床屋  | barber, barber's           |
| プレイガイド |     | (theater) ticket agency    |
| どくしん   | 独身  | single, unmarried          |

◀会話▶

|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| 特に         | especially                       |
| 思い出します I   | remember, recollect              |
| ご家族        | your family                      |
| いらっしゃいます I | be (honorific equivalent of います) |
| 高校         | senior high school               |

日本橋

name of a shopping district in Osaka

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. You may take photographs.
2. Mr. Santos has a personal computer.

### Example Sentences

1. May I keep this catalog?  
...Sure, please do.
2. May I borrow this dictionary?  
...I'm sorry, but... I'm using it now.
3. You must not play here.  
...All right.
4. Do you know the phone number of the City Hall?  
...No, I don't.
5. Where do you live, Ms. Maria?  
...I live in Osaka.
6. Is Mr. Wang single?  
...No, he is married.
7. What is your job?  
...I am a teacher. I teach at Fuji University.  
Your speciality?  
...It's Japanese fine art.

### Conversation

#### Tell me about your family

- Miller: Today's movie was good, wasn't it?
- Kimura: Yes, it was. The father was particularly good, wasn't he?
- Miller: Yes. I was reminded of my family.
- Kimura: Were you? Tell me about your family, Mr. Miller.
- Miller: I have my parents and an elder sister.
- Kimura: Where do they live?
- Miller: My parents live near New York City.  
My sister is in London.
- How about your family, Ms. Kimura?
- Kimura: There are three of us. My father works for a bank.  
My mother teaches English at a high school.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### しょくぎょう 職業

#### OCCUPATIONS

|                                   |                                        |                                                    |                                                  |                              |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| かいしゃいん<br>会社員<br>company employee | こうりもいん<br>公務員<br>civil servant         | えきいん<br>駅員<br>station clerk                        | ぎんこういん<br>銀行員<br>bank clerk                      | ゆうびんきょくいん<br>郵便局員<br>postman |
|                                   |                                        |                                                    |                                                  |                              |
| てんいん<br>店員<br>shop clerk          | ちょうりし<br>調理師<br>cook                   | りようし<br>理容師<br>barber<br>びようし<br>美容師<br>beautician | きょうし<br>教師<br>teacher                            | へんごし<br>弁護士<br>lawyer        |
|                                   |                                        |                                                    |                                                  |                              |
| けんきゅうしゃ<br>研究者<br>research worker | いしゃ / かんごふ<br>医者 / 看護婦<br>doctor/nurse | うんてんしゅ<br>運転手<br>driver                            | けいさつかん<br>警察官<br>policeman                       | がいこうかん<br>外交官<br>diplomat    |
|                                   |                                        |                                                    |                                                  |                              |
| せいじか<br>政治家<br>politician         | がか<br>画家<br>painter                    | さつか<br>作家<br>author                                | おんがくか<br>音楽家<br>musician                         | けんちくか<br>建築家<br>architect    |
|                                   |                                        |                                                    |                                                  |                              |
| エンジニア<br>engineer                 | デザイナー<br>designer                      | ジャーナリスト<br>journalist                              | かしゅ / はいわう<br>歌手 / 俳優<br>singer/actor<br>actress | スポーツ選手<br>athlete            |
|                                   |                                        |                                                    |                                                  |                              |

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. **Vて-form も いいです** You may do...

This expression is used to grant permission.

- ① 写真を 撮っても いいです。 You may take pictures.

To ask for permission, the question form of this sentence is used.

- ② たばこを 吸っても いいですか。 May I smoke?

How to answer such a question using the same sentence pattern is as follows. Note that an euphemistic answer is given when permission is not granted.

- ③ この カタログを もらっても いいですか。

…ええ、 いいですよ。 どうぞ。

…すみません。 ちょっと。

May I have this catalogue?

…Yes. Here you are.

…Sorry. I'm afraid not.

### 2. **Vて-form は いけません** You must not do...

This sentence pattern is used to express prohibition.

- ④ ここで たばこを 吸っては いけません。 禁煙ですから。

You must not smoke here. Because this is no-smoking area.

When you strongly wish to refuse permission to questions using the expression Vて-form も いいですか, you answer いいえ、 いけません, omitting Vて-form は. This expression cannot be used by an inferior to a superior.

- ⑤ 先生、 ここで 遊んでも いいですか。 May we play here, Ma'am?

…いいえ、 いけません。 …No, you must not.

### 3. **Vて-form います**

In addition to the usage of Vて-form います you learned in Lesson 14, it is also used in describing a certain continuing state which resulted from a certain action in the past.

- ⑥ わたしは 結婚して います。 I'm married.

- ⑦ わたしは 田中さんを 知って います。 I know Mr. Tanaka.

- ⑧ わたしは 大阪に 住んで います。 I live in Osaka.

- ⑨ わたしは カメラを 持って います。 I have a camera.

もって います means “be holding” and “possess” as well.

#### 4. **Vて-form います**

Vて-form います is also used in describing a habitual action; that is, when the same action is repeatedly performed over a period of time.

Therefore, one's occupation can be expressed by this sentence pattern, like in ⑫ and ⑬. So if the question おしごとは なんですか is asked, this sentence pattern can be used to answer it.

⑩ IMCは コンピューターソフトを作っています。

IMC makes computer software.

⑪ スーパーで フィルムを 売っています。

Supermarkets sell films.

⑫ ミラーさんは IMCで 働いています。

Mr. Miller works for IMC.

⑬ 妹は 大学で 勉強しています。

My younger sister is studying at university.

#### 5. 知りません

The negative form of しっています is しりません.

⑭ 市役所の 電話番号を 知っていますか。

…はい、知っています。

…いいえ、知りません。

Do you know the telephone number of the city hall?

…Yes, I do.

…No, I don't.

# Lesson 16

## I. Vocabulary

|                                          |                                |                                                            |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| のります I<br>[でんしゃに～]                       | 乗ります<br>[電車に～]                 | ride, get on [a train]                                     |
| おります II<br>[でんしゃを～]                      | 降ります<br>[電車を～]                 | get off [a train]                                          |
| のりかえます II<br>あびます II<br>[シャワーを～]         | 乗り換えます<br>浴びます                 | change (trains, etc.)<br>take [a shower]                   |
| いれます II<br>だします I<br>はいります I<br>[だいがくに～] | 入れます<br>出します<br>入ります<br>[大学に～] | put in, insert<br>take out, withdraw<br>enter [university] |
| でます II<br>[だいがくを～]                       | 出ます<br>[大学を～]                  | graduate from [university]                                 |
| やめます II<br>[かいしゃを～]                      |                                | quit or retire from [a company], stop, give up             |
| おします I                                   | 押します                           | push, press                                                |

|        |      |                            |
|--------|------|----------------------------|
| わかい    | 若い   | young                      |
| ながい    | 長い   | long                       |
| みじかい   | 短い   | short                      |
| あかるい   | 明るい  | bright, light              |
| くらい    | 暗い   | dark                       |
| せがたかい  | 背が高い | tall (referring to person) |
| あたまがいい | 頭がいい | clever, smart              |

|     |   |           |
|-----|---|-----------|
| からだ | 体 | body      |
| あたま | 頭 | head      |
| かみ  | 髪 | hair      |
| かお  | 顔 | face      |
| め   | 目 | eye       |
| みみ  | 耳 | ear       |
| くち  | 口 | mouth     |
| は   |   | tooth     |
| おなか | 歯 | stomach   |
| あし  | 足 | leg, foot |

|                |                                                      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| サービス           | service                                              |
| ジョギング          | jogging (~をします: jog)                                 |
| シャワー           | shower                                               |
| みどり            | green, greenery                                      |
| [お]てら<br>じんじゃ  | [お]寺<br>神社                                           |
| りゅうがくせい        | 留学生                                                  |
| ーばん            | number —                                             |
| どうやって<br>どの~   | in what way, how<br>which ~ (used for three or more) |
| [いひえ、] まだまだです。 | [No,] I still have a long way to go.                 |

## ◀会話▶

|                  |                                     |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| お引き出しだですか。<br>まず | Are you making a withdrawal?        |
| キャッシュカード         | first of all                        |
| 暗証番号             | cash dispensing card                |
| 次に               | personal identification number, PIN |
| 金額               | next, as a next step                |
| 確認               | amount of money                     |
| ボタン              | confirmation (~します: confirm)        |
| ~~~~~            | button                              |

|       |                        |
|-------|------------------------|
| J R   | Japan Railway          |
| アジア   | Asia                   |
| バンドン  | Bandung (in Indonesia) |
| ベラクルス | Veracruz (in Mexico)   |
| フランケン | Franken (in Germany)   |
| ベトナム  | Vietnam                |
| フエ    | Hue (in Vietnam)       |
| 大学前   | fictitious bus stop    |

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. In the morning I go jogging, take a shower and go to the office.
2. We dined at a restaurant after the concert was over.
3. The food is delicious in Osaka.
4. This personal computer is light and handy.

### Example Sentences

1. What did you do yesterday?  
…I went to the library and borrowed some books, and then met a friend.
2. How do you go to your university?  
…I take a No. 16 bus from Kyoto Station and get off at Daigaku-mae.
3. What are you going to do after getting back to your country?  
…I will work for my father’s company.
4. Which person is Mr. Santos?  
…He is that tall man with dark hair.
5. What kind of city is Nara?  
…It is a quiet and beautiful city.
6. Who is that person?  
…That is Ms. Karina. She is Indonesian, and an overseas student at Fuji University.

### Conversation

#### Tell me how to use this machine

- Maria: Excuse me. Could you tell me how to use this machine?
- Bank clerk: You want to make a withdrawal?
- Maria: Yes.
- Bank clerk: Then, please push this button, first.
- Maria: Yes.
- Bank clerk: Do you have a cash card?
- Maria: Yes, here it is.
- Bank clerk: Put it in here, and enter the code number.
- Maria: Yes.
- Bank clerk: Next, enter the sum.
- Maria: Fifty thousand yen. Five...
- Bank clerk: Push this “Man” and “En.”
- Maria: And then push this “Kakunin” button.
- Maria: Got it. Thank you very much.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### ATMの使い方

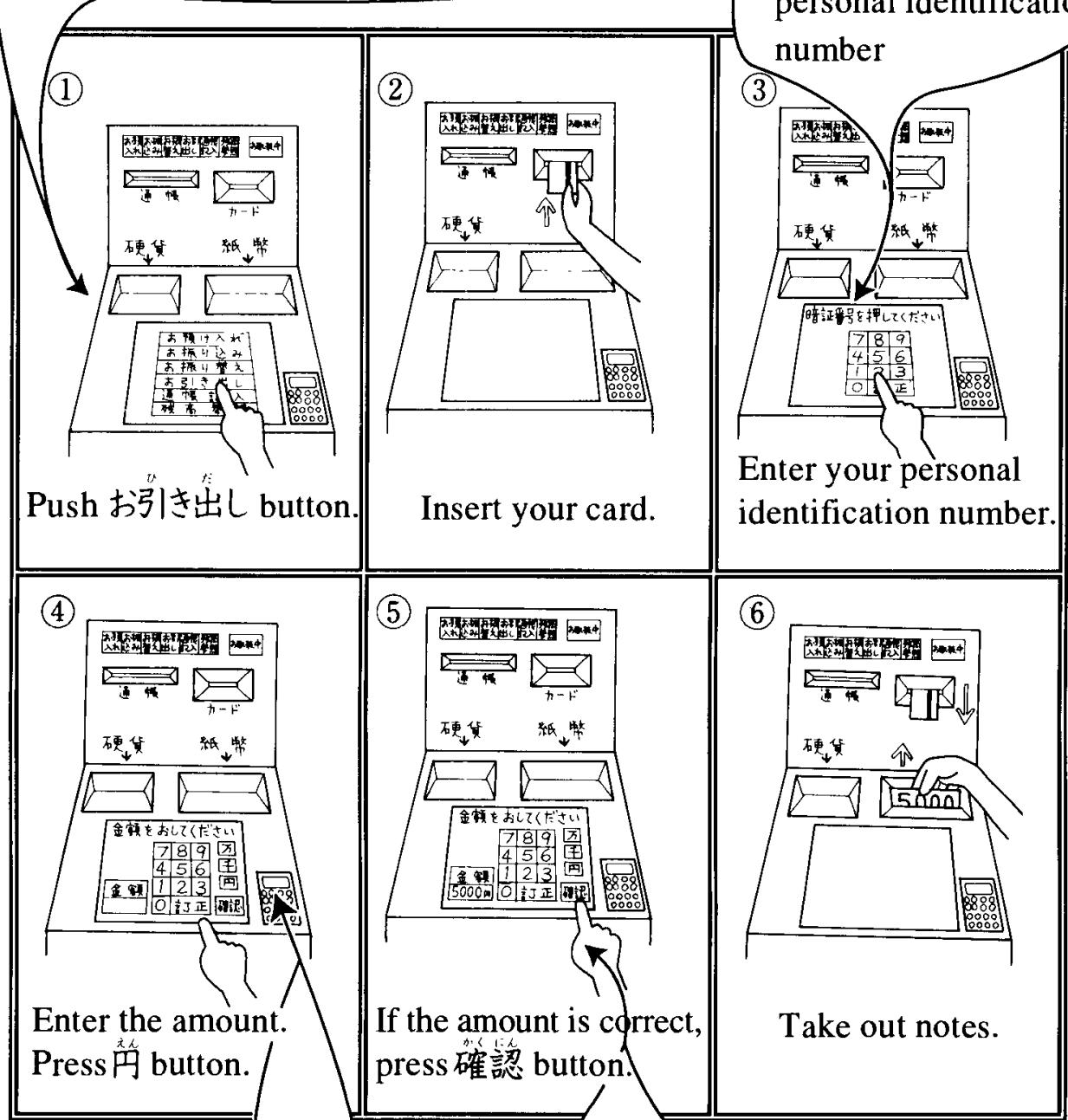
#### HOW TO WITHDRAW MONEY

お預け入れ  
お振り込み  
お振り替え  
お引き出し  
通帳記入  
残高照会

deposit  
payment  
transfer  
drawing out  
updating your pass book  
balance inquiry

暗証番号

personal identification  
number



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. [V て -form, [V て -form], ~]

To connect verb sentences, the て-form is used. When two or more actions take place in succession, the actions are mentioned in the order of occurrence by using the て-form. The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense form of the last verb in the sentence.

① 朝 ジョギングをして、シャワーを浴びて、会社へ行きます。

In the morning, I jog, take a shower and go to the office.

② 神戸へ行って、映画を見て、お茶を飲みました。

I went to Kobe, saw a movie and drank tea.

### 2. [い-adj (~イ) → ~くて, ~]

When joining an い-adjective sentence to another sentence, take away the い from the い-adjective and attach くて.

おおきーい → おおきーくて

big

ちいさーい → ちいさーくて

small

いーい → \*よーくて

(exception)

good

③ ミラーさんは若くて、元気です。

Mr. Miller is young and lively.

④ きのうは天気がよくて、暑かったです。

Yesterday it was fine and hot.

### 3. [N な-adj [な] } で、~]

When joining noun sentences or な-adjective sentences, です is changed to で.

⑤ カリナさんはインドネシア人で、京都大学の留学生です。

Ms. Karina is an Indonesian and a student of Kyoto University.

⑥ ミラーさんはハンサムで、親切です。

Mr. Miller is handsome and kind.

⑦ 奈良は静かで、きれいな町です。

Nara is a quiet and beautiful city.

[Note 1] The above structures can be used not only for connecting sentences relating to the same topic but also sentences with different topics.

⑧ カリナさんは学生で、マリアさんは主婦です。

Ms. Karina is a student and Maria is a housewife.

[Note 2] This method cannot connect sentences of contradictory notion. In that case, が is used (see Lesson 8, 7).

× この部屋は狭くて、きれいです。

○ この部屋は狭いですが、きれいです。This room is small but clean.

#### 4. **V<sub>1</sub> て-form から、V<sub>2</sub>**

This sentence pattern indicates that upon completion of the action denoted by V<sub>1</sub>, the action of V<sub>2</sub> is to be conducted. The tense of the sentence is determined by the tense form of the last verb in the sentence.

⑨ 国へ帰ってから、父の会社で働きます。

I will work for my father's company after going back to my country.

⑩ コンサートが終わってから、レストランで食事しました。

We ate at a restaurant after the concert was over.

[Note] The subject of a subordinate clause is indicated by が, as shown in the example sentence ⑩.

#### 5. **N<sub>1</sub> は N<sub>2</sub> が adjective**

This sentence pattern is used to describe an attribute of a thing or a person. The topic of the sentence is denoted by は. N<sub>1</sub> is the topic of the sentence. N<sub>2</sub> is the subject of the adjective's description.

⑪ 大阪は食べ物がおいしいです。Food is tasty in Osaka.

⑫ ドイツのフランケンはワインが有名です。

Franken in Germany produces famous wine.

⑬ マリアさんは髪が長いです。Maria has long hair.

#### 6. どうやって

どうやって is used to ask the way or the method of doing something. To answer such a question, the pattern learned in 1. is used.

⑭ 大学までどうやって行きますか。

…京都駅から16番のバスに乗って、大学前で降ります。

How do you go to your university?

…I take a No.16 bus from Kyoto Station and get off at Daigaku-mae.

#### 7. どの N

You learned in Lesson 2 that この, その and あの modify nouns. The interrogative word used in this system is どの. どの is used to ask the listener to define one among more than two which are concretely presented.

⑮ サントスさんはどの人ですか。

…あの背が高くて、髪が黒い人です。

Which one is Mr. Santos?

…That tall man with black hair is.

# Lesson 17

## I. Vocabulary

|                      |                 |                                       |
|----------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| おぼえます II             | 覚えます            | memorize                              |
| わすれます II             | 忘れます            | forget                                |
| なくします I              |                 | lose                                  |
| だします I<br>[レポートを～]   | 出します            | hand in [a report]                    |
| はらいます I              | 払います            | pay                                   |
| かえします I              | 返します            | give back, return                     |
| でかけます II             | 出かけます           | go out                                |
| ぬぎます I               | 脱ぎます            | take off (clothes, shoes, etc.)       |
| もっていきます I            | 持って行きます         | take (something)                      |
| もってきます III           | 持って来ます          | bring (something)                     |
| しんぱいします III          | 心配します           | worry                                 |
| ざんぎょうします III         | 残業します           | work overtime                         |
| しゅっちょうします III        |                 | go on a business trip                 |
| のみます I<br>[くすりを～]    | 出張します           |                                       |
| 飲みます                 | 飲みます            | take [medicine]                       |
| はいります I<br>[おふろに～]   | [薬を～]           |                                       |
| 入ります                 |                 | take [a bath]                         |
| たいせつ[な]<br>だいじょうぶ[な] | 大切[な]<br>大丈夫[な] | important, precious<br>all right      |
| あぶない                 | 危ない             | dangerous                             |
| もんだい<br>こたえ          | 問題<br>答え        | question, problem, trouble<br>answer  |
| きんえん<br>[けんこう]ほけんしょう | 禁煙<br>[健康]保険証   | no smoking<br>[health] insurance card |
| かぜ                   | 禁煙              | cold, flu                             |
| ねつ                   |                 | fever                                 |
| びょうき                 | 熱               | illness, disease                      |
| くすり                  | 病気              |                                       |
|                      | 薬               | medicine                              |

[お]ふろ

bath

うわぎ  
したぎ

上着  
下着

jacket, outerwear  
underwear

せんせい

先生

doctor (used when addressing a medical doctor)

2、3にち

2、3日

a few days

2、3～

a few ~ (~ is a counter suffix)

～までに

before ~, by ~ (indicating time limit)

ですから

therefore, so

### ◆会話◆

どうしましたか。

What's the matter?

[～が] 痛いです。  
のど

(I) have a pain [in my ~].

throat

お大事に。

Take care of yourself. (said to people who are ill)

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. Please don't take photographs here.
2. You must show your passport.
3. You do not have to submit the report.

### Example Sentences

1. Do not park your car there, please.  
...I am sorry.
2. Doctor, may I drink alcohol?  
...No, refrain from it for two or three days.  
Yes, doctor.
3. Shall we go for a drink tonight?  
...Sorry. Today I'm going out with my wife.  
So I must go home early.
4. By when do I have to submit the report?  
...Submit it by Friday, please.
5. Do the children have to pay, too?  
...No, they don't have to pay.

### Conversation

#### What seems to be the problem?

- Doctor: What seems to be the problem?  
Matsumoto: I have had a sore throat and a slight temperature since yesterday.  
Doctor: Well, please open your mouth.
- 
- Doctor: You have a cold. You need a good rest.  
Matsumoto: Doctor, I have to go to Tokyo on business from tomorrow.  
Doctor: Well then, take this medicine and go to bed early today.  
Matsumoto: Yes, doctor.  
Doctor: And do not take a bath tonight.  
Matsumoto: I see.  
Doctor: Please take care.  
Matsumoto: Thank you very much, doctor.

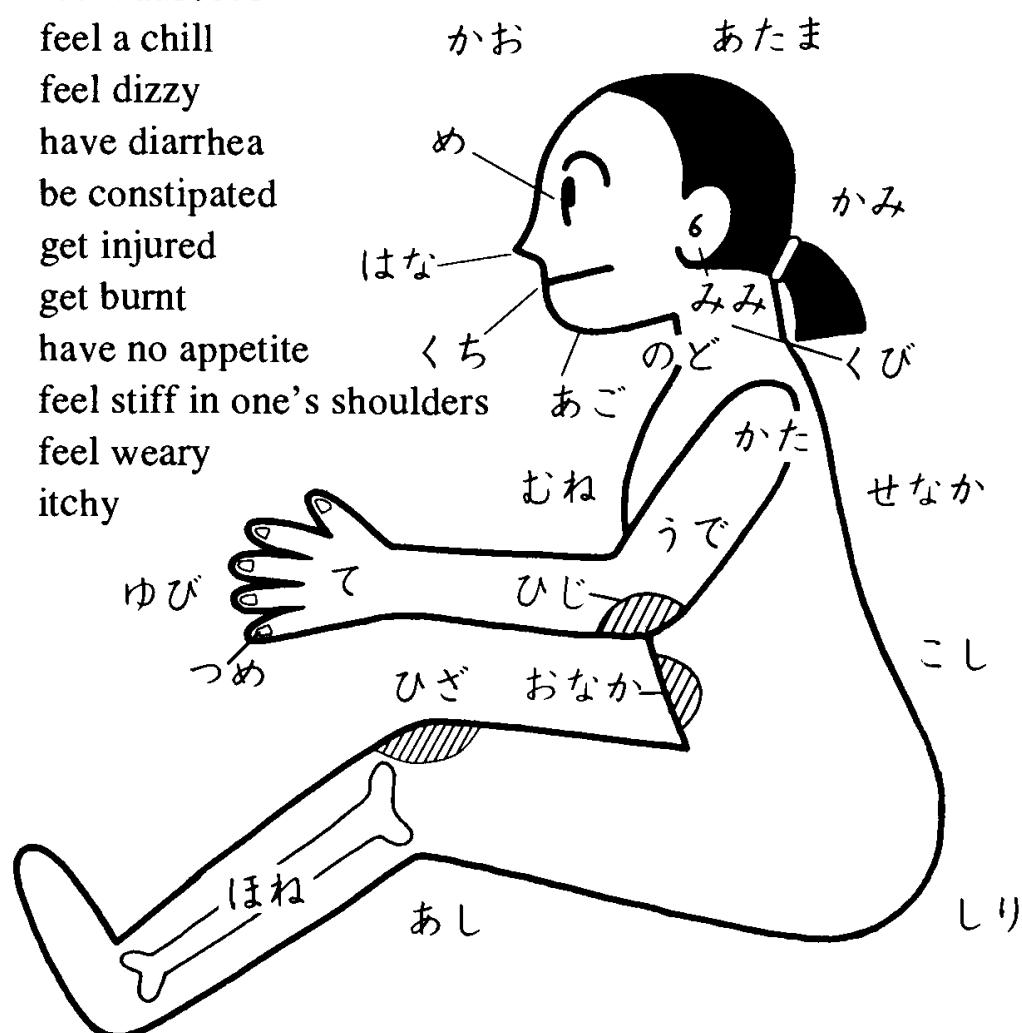
### III. Reference Words & Information

#### からだ びょうき 体・病気 BODY & ILLNESS

どうしましたか What seems to be the problem?

|        |                               |
|--------|-------------------------------|
| 頭が痛い   | have a headache               |
| おなかが痛い | have a stomachache            |
| 歯が痛い   | have a toothache              |
| 熱がある   | have a fever                  |
| せきが出る  | have a cough                  |
| 鼻水が出る  | have a runny nose             |
| 血が出る   | bleed                         |
| 吐き気がする | feel nauseous                 |
| 寒気がする  | feel a chill                  |
| めまいがする | feel dizzy                    |
| 下痢をする  | have diarrhea                 |
| 便秘をする  | be constipated                |
| けがをする  | get injured                   |
| やけどをする | get burnt                     |
| 食欲がない  | have no appetite              |
| 肩がこる   | feel stiff in one's shoulders |
| 体がだるい  | feel weary                    |
| かゆい    | itchy                         |

17



111

かぜ  
インフルエンザ  
盲腸

cold  
influenza  
appendicitis

ぎっくり腰  
ねんざ  
骨折  
二日酔い

slipped disc  
sprain  
bone fracture  
hangover

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb ない-form

The verb form used with ない is called the ない-form; that is to say, かか of かかない is the ない-form of かきます (write). How to make the ない-form is given below (see Main Textbook, Lesson 17, p. 140, 練習 A 1).

#### 1) Group I

In the verbs of this group the last sound of the ます-form is always the sound in the い-line. So, replace it with the sound of the あ-line to make a ない-form. The exceptions to this rule are such verbs as かいます, あいます, etc. (わ is the last sound of the ない-form in these verbs instead of あ.) (See Main Textbook, p. 2, “かなと拍.”)

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| かきーます → かかーない | いそぎーます → いそがーない |
| よみーます → よまーない | あそびーます → あそばーない |
| とりーます → どらーない | まちーます → またーない   |
| すいーます → すわーない | はなしーます → はなさーない |

#### 2) Group II

The ない-form of verbs of this group is just the same as the ます-form.

|         |       |
|---------|-------|
| たべーます → | たべーない |
| みーます →  | みーない  |

#### 3) Group III

The ない-form of します is the same as the ます-form. きます becomes こ(ない).

|             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| べんきょうしーます → | べんきょうしーない |
| しーます →      | しーない      |
| きーます →      | こーない      |

### 2. **Vない-form ないで ください** Please don't...

This expression is used to ask or instruct someone not to do something.

① わたしは 元氣ですから、心配しないで ください。

I am fine, so please don't worry about me.

② ここで 写真を 摄らないで ください。

Please don't take pictures here.

### 3. **Vない-form なければ なりません** must...

This expression means something has to be done regardless of the will of the actor. Note that this doesn't have a negative meaning.

③ 薬を 飲まなければ なりません。 I must take medicine.

#### 4. **Vない-form** なくても いいです need not ...

This sentence pattern indicates that the action described by the verb does not have to be done.

- ④ あした 来なくとも いいです。 You don't have to come tomorrow.

#### 5. **N(object)は**

You learned in Lesson 6 that the particle を is attached to the direct object of verbs. Here you learn that the object is made a topic by replacing を with は.

ここに 荷物を 置かないで ください。

Please don't put parcels here.

- ⑤ 荷物は ここに 置かないで ください。

As for parcels, don't put them here.

会社の 食堂で 昼ごはんを 食べます。

I have lunch in the company cafeteria.

- ⑥ 昼ごはんは 会社の 食堂で 食べます。

As for lunch, I have it in the company cafeteria.

#### 6. **N(time)までに V**

The point in time indicated by までに is the time limit by which an action is to be done.

- ⑦ 会議は 5時までに 終わります。

The meeting will be over by five.

- ⑧ 土曜日までに 本を 返さなければ なりません。

I must return the book by Saturday.

[Note] Make sure you do not confuse までに with the particle まで.

5時まで 働きます。

I work until five. (L. 4)

# Lesson 18

## I. Vocabulary

|             |       |                                           |
|-------------|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| できます II     |       | be able to, can                           |
| あらいます I     | 洗います  | wash                                      |
| ひきます I      | 弾きます  | play (stringed instrument or piano, etc.) |
| うたいます I     | 歌います  | sing                                      |
| あつめます II    | 集めます  | collect, gather                           |
| すてます II     | 捨てます  | throw away                                |
| かえます II     | 換えます  | exchange, change                          |
| うんてんします III | 運転します | drive                                     |
| よやくします III  | 予約します | reserve, book                             |
| けんがくします III | 見学します | visit some place for study                |

ピアノ

piano

—メートル

— meter

こくさい～

国際～

international ~

げんきん

現金

cash

しゅみ

趣味

hobby

につき

日記

diary

[お]いのり

[お]祈り

prayer (~を します: pray)

かちょう

課長

section chief

ぶちょう

部長

department chief

しゃちょう

社長

president of a company

◀会話▶

動物

animal

馬

horse

へえ

Really! (used when expressing surprise)

それは おもしろいですね。

That must be interesting.

なかなか

not easily (used with negatives)

牧場

ranch, stock farm

ほんとうですか。

Really?

ぜひ

by all means



ビートルズ

the Beatles, famous British music group

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. Mr. Miller can read Kanji.
2. My hobby is watching films.
3. I write in my diary before I go to bed.

### Example Sentences

1. Can you ski?  
…Yes, I can. But I am not very good at it.
2. Can you use a personal computer, Ms. Maria?  
…No, I can’t.
3. Until what time can we visit Osaka Castle?  
…It is open until five o’clock.
4. Can I pay by credit card?  
…I am sorry, but please pay in cash.
5. What is your hobby?  
…Collecting old clocks and watches.
6. Must Japanese children learn Hiragana before they enter school?  
…No, they need not.
7. Please take this medicine before meals.  
…Yes, I will.
8. When did you get married?  
…We got married three years ago.

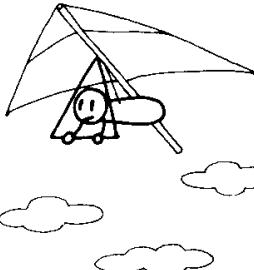
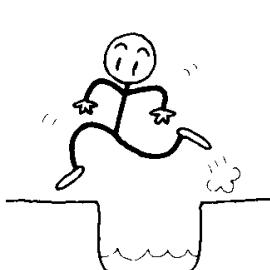
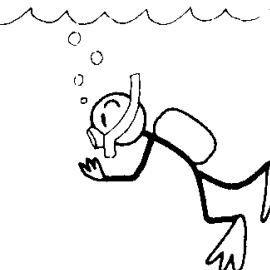
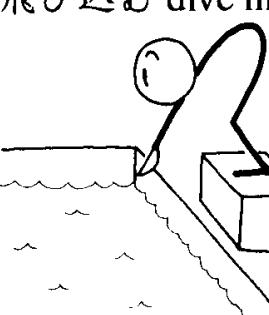
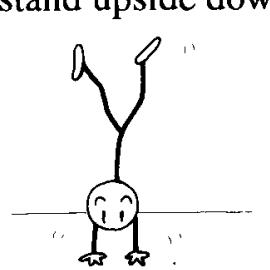
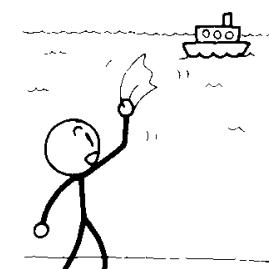
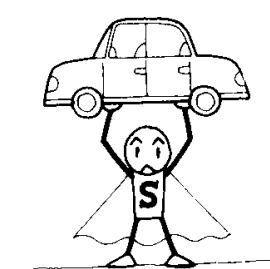
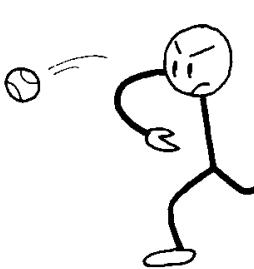
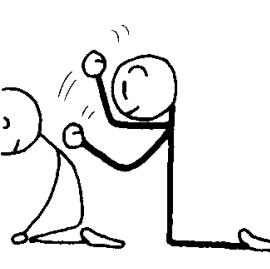
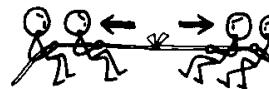
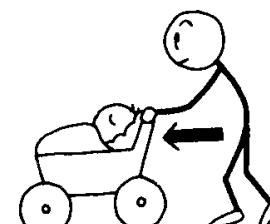
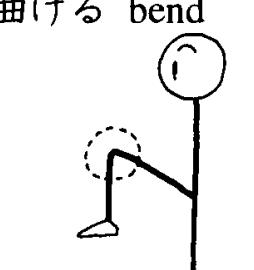
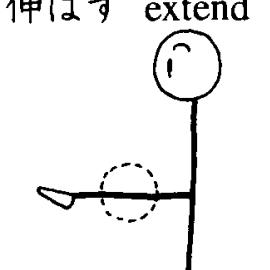
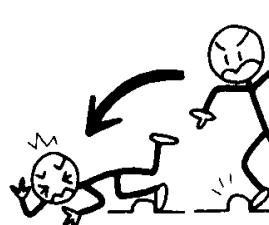
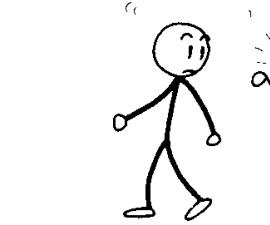
### Conversation

#### What is your hobby?

- Yamada: What is your hobby, Mr. Santos?
- Santos: Photography.
- Yamada: What kind of photos do you take?
- Santos: Photos of animals. I like those of horses, especially.
- Yamada: Oh, that’s interesting.
- Have you taken photos of horses since you came to Japan?
- Santos: No.
- You can hardly ever see horses in Japan.
- Yamada: There is a lot of pastureland for horses in Hokkaido.
- Santos: Really?
- Then I would really like to go there on summer vacation.

### III. Reference Words & Information

動き ACTIONS

|                                                                                                 |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 飛ぶ fly<br>      | 跳ぶ jump<br>      | 登る climb<br>        | 走る run<br>                   |
| 泳ぐ swim<br>    | もぐる dive<br>    | 飛び込む dive into<br> | 逆立ちする stand upside down<br> |
| はう crawl<br>  | ける kick<br>    | 振る wave<br>       | 持ち上げる lift<br>             |
| 投げる throw<br> | たたく pat<br>    | 引く pull<br>       | 押す push<br>                |
| 曲げる bend<br>  | 伸ばす extend<br> | 転ぶ fall down<br>  | 振り向く look back<br>         |

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb dictionary form

This form is the basic form of a verb. Verbs are given in this form in the dictionary, hence the name. How to make the dictionary form is given below. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 18, p. 148, 練習 A 1.)

- 1) Group I In the verbs of this group the last sound of the ます-form is always in the い-line. Replace it with the sound in the う-line to make the dictionary form. (See Main Textbook, p. 2, “かなと拍.”)
- 2) Group II Attach る to the ます-form.
- 3) Group III します becomes する and きます becomes くる.

### 2. | | | |-------------------|----| | N | | | V dictionary form | こと | が できます can...

できます is the verb which expresses ability or possibility. A noun and V dictionary form こと before が indicates the content of ability or possibility.

#### 1) Noun

Nouns placed before が are mostly nouns which express actions such as driving a car, shopping, skiing, dancing, etc. Nouns such as ほんご, which is associated with the action はなす, or ピアノ, which is associated with the action ひく, can also be used here.

① ミラーさんは 日本語が できます。

Mr. Miller can speak Japanese.

② 雪が たくさん 降りましたから、ことしは スキーが できます。

It's snowed a lot, so we can ski this year.

#### 2) Verb

When a verb is used to describe ability or possibility, こと should be attached to the dictionary form of the verb to make it a nominalized phrase and then が できます is put after that.

③ ミラーさんは 漢字を 読む ことが できます.

nominalized phrase      Mr. Miller can read Kanji.

④ カードで 払う ことが できます.

You can pay by credit card.

nominalized phrase

### 3. | | | |-------------------|----| | わたしの 趣味は | N | | V dictionary form | こと | です My hobby is...

As shown in ⑤ and ⑥ below, V dictionary form こと can express the content of hobbies more concretely than the noun alone can do.

⑤ わたしの 趣味は 音楽です。      My hobby is music.

⑥ わたしの 趣味は 音楽を 聞く ことです。

My hobby is listening to the music.

#### 4. V<sub>1</sub> dictionary form

Nの

Quantifier (period)

まえに、V<sub>2</sub>

..., before...

##### 1) Verb

This sentence pattern indicates that the action of V<sub>2</sub> occurs before the action of V<sub>1</sub> takes place. Even when the tense of V<sub>2</sub> is in the past tense or the future tense, V<sub>1</sub> is always in the dictionary form.

⑦ 日本へ 来る まえに、日本語を 勉強しました。

I studied Japanese before I came to Japan.

⑧ 寝る まえに、本を 読みます。 I read a book before I go to bed.

##### 2) Noun

When まえに comes after a noun, the particle の is put between the noun and まえに. Nouns before まえに are nouns which express actions or nouns which imply actions.

⑨ 食事の まえに、手を 洗います。 I wash my hands before eating.

##### 3) Quantifier (period)

When まえに comes after a quantifier (period), the particle の is not necessary.

⑩ 田中さんは 1時間 まえに、出かけました。

Mr. Tanaka left an hour ago.

## 5. なかなか

When なかなか is accompanied by a negative expression, it means “not easily” or “not as expected.”

⑪ 日本では なかなか 馬を見る ことが できません。

In Japan we can rarely see horses.

[Note] は of にほんでは in ⑪ is attached to で to emphasize the location or area under discussion.

## 6. ゼひ

ゼひ is used with expressions of hope and request such as ほしいです, Vます-form たいです and Vて-form ください and emphasizes the meaning of the expressions.

⑫ ゼひ 北海道へ 行きたいです。

I want to go to Hokkaido very much.

⑬ ゼひ 遊びに 来て ください。 Please come to my place. (L. 25)

# Lesson 19

## I. Vocabulary

|                    |               |                                                               |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| のぼります I<br>[やまに～]  | 登ります<br>[山に～] | climb [a mountain]                                            |
| とまります I<br>[ホテルに～] | 泊まります         | stay [at a hotel]                                             |
| そうじします III         | 掃除します         | clean (a room)                                                |
| せんたくします III        | 洗濯します         | wash (clothes)                                                |
| れんしゅうします III       | 練習します         | practice                                                      |
| なります I             |               | become                                                        |
| ねむい                | 眠い            | sleepy                                                        |
| つよい                | 強い            | strong                                                        |
| よわい                | 弱い            | weak                                                          |
| ちょうどいい             | 調子がいい         | be in good condition                                          |
| ちょうど悪い             | 調子が悪い         | be in bad condition                                           |
| ちょうし               | 調子            | condition                                                     |
| ゴルフ                |               | golf (~をします: play golf)                                       |
| すもう                |               | sumo wrestling                                                |
| パチンコ               |               | pinball game<br>(～をします: play pachinko)                        |
| おちゃ                | お茶            | tea ceremony                                                  |
| ひ                  | 日             | day, date                                                     |
| いちど                | 一度            | once                                                          |
| いちども               | 一度も           | not once, never (used with negatives)                         |
| だんだん               |               | gradually                                                     |
| もうすぐ               |               | soon                                                          |
| おかげさまで             |               | Thank you. (used when expressing gratitude for help received) |

◀会話▶

|              |                             |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| 乾杯           | Bottoms up./Cheers!         |
| 実は           | actually, to tell the truth |
| ダイエット        | diet (~をします: go on a diet)  |
| 何回も          | many times                  |
| しかし          | but, however                |
| 無理[な]        | excessive, impossible       |
| からだ<br>体に いい | good for one's health       |
| ケーキ          | cake                        |



葛飾 北斎

famous Edo period wood block artist and painter (1760-1849)

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. I have been to see sumo.
2. On holidays I play tennis, take walks and so on.
3. It's going to get hotter and hotter from now on.

### Example Sentences

1. Have you been to Hokkaido?  
…Yes, I once have. I went there two years ago with my friends.
2. Have you ever ridden a horse?  
…No, I never have. I am eager to try it.
3. What did you do on your winter vacation?  
…I visited temples and shrines in Kyoto, held a party with friends, and so on.
4. What would you like to do in Japan?  
…I would like to go on a trip, learn the tea ceremony and so on.
5. How are you feeling?  
…I've got better, thank you.
6. You have become good at Japanese.  
…Thank you, but I still have a long way to go.
7. Teresa, what would you like to be?  
…I would like to be a doctor.

### Conversation

#### As for my diet, I'll start it tomorrow

All:                   Cheers!

- 
- Ms. Matsumoto: Why, Ms. Maria, you're not eating much.  
Maria: No. To tell the truth, I have been on a diet since yesterday.  
Ms. Matsumoto: Have you? I have tried being on a diet many times, too.  
Maria: What kind of diets have you tried?  
Ms. Matsumoto: I tried eating only apples, and drinking a lot of water, and so on.  
Mr. Matsumoto: I'm afraid strict diets are not good for your health.  
Maria: You are right.  
Ms. Matsumoto: Ms. Maria, this cake is delicious.  
Maria: Is it?  
.... I'll start dieting again tomorrow.

### III. Reference Words & Information

でんとうぶんか ごらく  
伝統文化・娯楽

TRADITIONAL CULTURE & ENTERTAINMENT

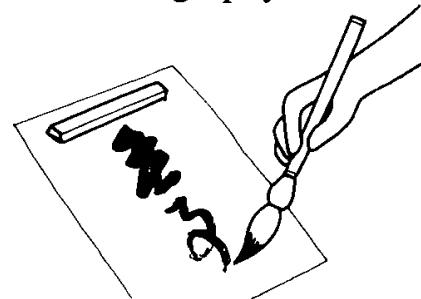
茶道 tea ceremony  
(お茶)



華道 flower arrangement  
(生け花)



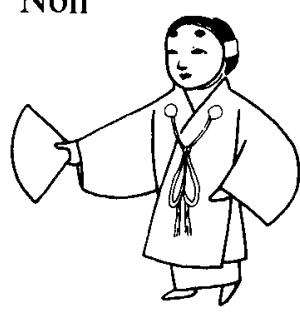
書道 calligraphy



歌舞伎 Kabuki



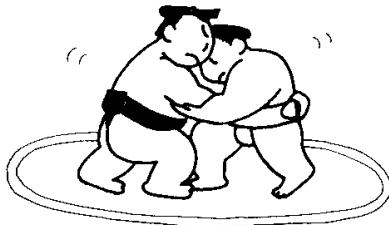
能 Noh



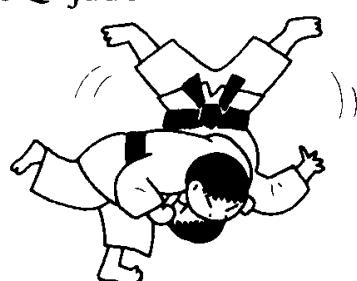
文楽 Bunraku



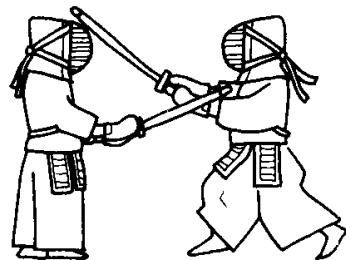
相撲 sumo



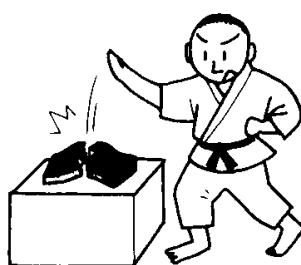
柔道 judo



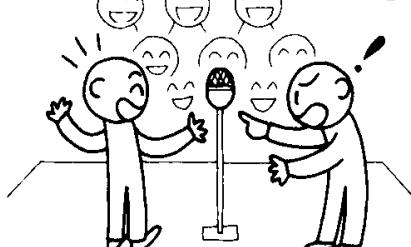
剣道 kendo



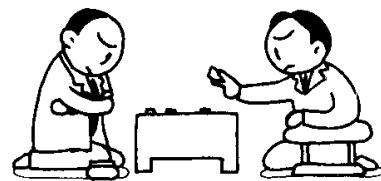
空手 karate



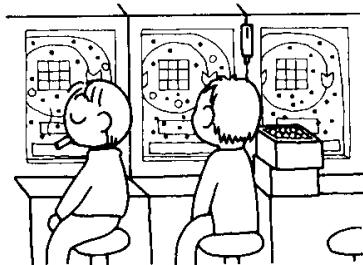
漫才・落語 manzai,  
rakugo



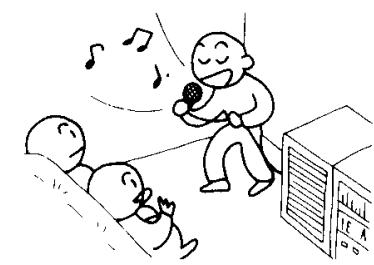
囲碁・将棋 go, shogi



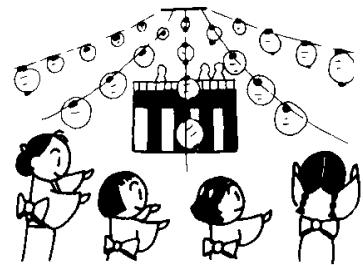
パチンコ pachinko



カラオケ karaoke



盆踊り Bon dance



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Verb た-form

In this lesson you learn the た-form. How to make the た-form is shown below.  
(See Main Textbook, Lesson 19, p. 156, 練習 A 1.)

The た-form is made by changing て and で of the て-form into た and だ respectively.

|           | て-form   | → | た-form   |
|-----------|----------|---|----------|
| Group I   | かいて      | → | かいた      |
|           | のんで      | → | のんだ      |
| Group II  | たべて      | → | たべた      |
| Group III | きて<br>して | → | きた<br>した |

### 2. V た-form ことが あります have the experience of V-ing

This sentence pattern is used to describe what one has experienced in the past. This is basically the same sentence as わたしは Nが あります which you learned in Lesson 9. The content of one's experience is expressed by the nominalized phrase V た-form こと.

① 馬に 乗った ことが あります。 I have ridden a horse.

Note that it is, therefore, different from a sentence which merely states the fact that one did something at a certain time in the past.

② 去年 北海道で 馬に 乗りました。

I rode a horse in Hokkaido last year.

### 3. V た-form り、V た-form り します V...and V..., and so on

You learned an expression for referring to a few things and persons among many (~や ~[など]) in Lesson 10. The sentences learned here are used in referring to some actions among many other actions. The tense of this sentence pattern is shown at the end of the sentence.

③ 日曜日は テニスを したり、映画を 見たり します。

On Sundays I play tennis, see a movie and so on.

④ 日曜日は テニスを したり、映画を 見たり しました。

Last Sunday I played tennis, saw a movie and so on.

[Note] Make sure that you don't confuse the meaning of this sentence pattern with that of the て-form sentence (⑤) which you learned in Lesson 16.

⑤ 日曜日は テニスを して、映画を見ました。

Last Sunday I played tennis and then saw a movie.

In ⑤ it is clear that seeing a movie took place after playing tennis. In ④ there is no time relation between the two activities. These activities are mentioned as example activities among the activities done on Sunday to imply that one did other activities besides them. And it is not natural that actions usually done by everybody every day such as getting up in the morning, taking meals, going to bed at night, etc., are mentioned.

|    |                 |      |           |
|----|-----------------|------|-----------|
| 4. | い-adj (~イ) → ~く | なります | become... |
|    | な-adj [な] → に   |      |           |
|    | N に             |      |           |

なります means “become” and indicates changes in a state or condition.

- |          |            |                     |
|----------|------------|---------------------|
| ⑥ 寒い     | → 寒くなります   | get cold            |
| ⑦ 元気 [な] | → 元気になります  | get well            |
| ⑧ 25歳    | → 25歳になります | become 25 years old |

## 5. そうですね

そうですね is used when you agree or sympathize with what your partner in conversation said. そうですか with a falling intonation is a similar expression to this (see Lesson 2, 6). そうですか(↓) is, however, an expression of your conviction or exclamation after getting information which was unknown to you, while そうですね is used to express your agreement or sympathy with your partner in conversation when he/she refers to something you agree with or already know.

- |             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| ⑨ 寒くなりましたね。 | It's got cold, hasn't it? |
| …そうですね。     | …Yes, it has.             |

# Lesson 20

## I. Vocabulary

|                  |       |                                                                                  |
|------------------|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| いります I<br>[ビザが～] | 要ります  | need, require [a visa]                                                           |
| しらべます II         | 調べます  | check, investigate                                                               |
| なおします I          | 直します  | repair, correct                                                                  |
| しゅうりします III      | 修理します | repair                                                                           |
| でんわします III       | 電話します | phone                                                                            |
| ぼく               | 僕     | I (an informal equivalent of わたし used by men)                                    |
| きみ               | 君     | you (an informal equivalent of あなた used by men)                                  |
| ～くん              | ～君    | Mr. (an informal equivalent of ～さん used by men)                                  |
| うん               |       | yes (an informal equivalent of はい)                                               |
| ううん              |       | no (an informal equivalent of いいえ)                                               |
| サラリーマン           |       | salaried worker, office worker                                                   |
| ことば              |       | word, language                                                                   |
| ぶっか              | 物価    | commodity prices                                                                 |
| きもの              | 着物    | kimono (traditional Japanese attire)                                             |
| ビザ               |       | visa                                                                             |
| はじめ              | 初め    | the beginning                                                                    |
| おわり              | 終わり   | the end                                                                          |
| こっち              |       | this way, this place (an informal equivalent of こちら)                             |
| そっち              |       | this way, that place (an informal equivalent of そちら)                             |
| あっち              |       | this way, that place over there (an informal equivalent of あちら)                  |
| どっち              |       | which one (between two things), which way, where (an informal equivalent of どちら) |

このあいだ  
みんなで  
～けど

この間

the other day  
all together  
～, but (an informal equivalent of ガ)

◀会話▶

国へ 帰るの?  
どう するの?  
どう しようかな。  
よかつたら  
いろいろ

Are you going back to your country?  
What will you do?  
What shall I do?  
if you like  
various

## **II. Translation**

### **Sentence Patterns**

1. Mr. Santos did not come to the party.
2. Things are expensive in Japan.
3. The sea around Okinawa was beautiful.
4. Today is my birthday.

### **Example Sentences**

1. Will you have some ice cream?  
…Yes, I will.
2. Do you have any scissors?  
…No, I don’t.
3. Did you see Ms. Kimura yesterday?  
…No, I didn’t.
4. Shall we go to Kyoto all together tomorrow?  
…Yes. That sounds nice.
5. Is the curry delicious?  
…Yes, it is hot, but delicious.
6. Are you free now?  
…Yes, I am. Why?  
Give me a hand, please.
7. Do you have a dictionary?  
…No, I don’t.

### **Conversation**

#### **What will you do for the summer vacation?**

- Kobayashi: Are you going home for the summer vacation?
- Thawaphon: No, I won’t. Though I want to....  
What about you, Mr. Kobayashi?
- Kobayashi: Well, what shall I do?  
Have you climbed Mt. Fuji, Mr. Thawaphon?
- Thawaphon: No, I haven’t.
- Kobayashi: Then, if you’d like, shall we go together?
- Thawaphon: Yes, okay. When?
- Kobayashi: How about the beginning of August?
- Thawaphon: Sounds good.
- Kobayashi: Then, I will check up on various things and call you later.
- Thawaphon: Thanks. I’ll be waiting.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 人の呼び方

#### HOW TO ADDRESS PEOPLE

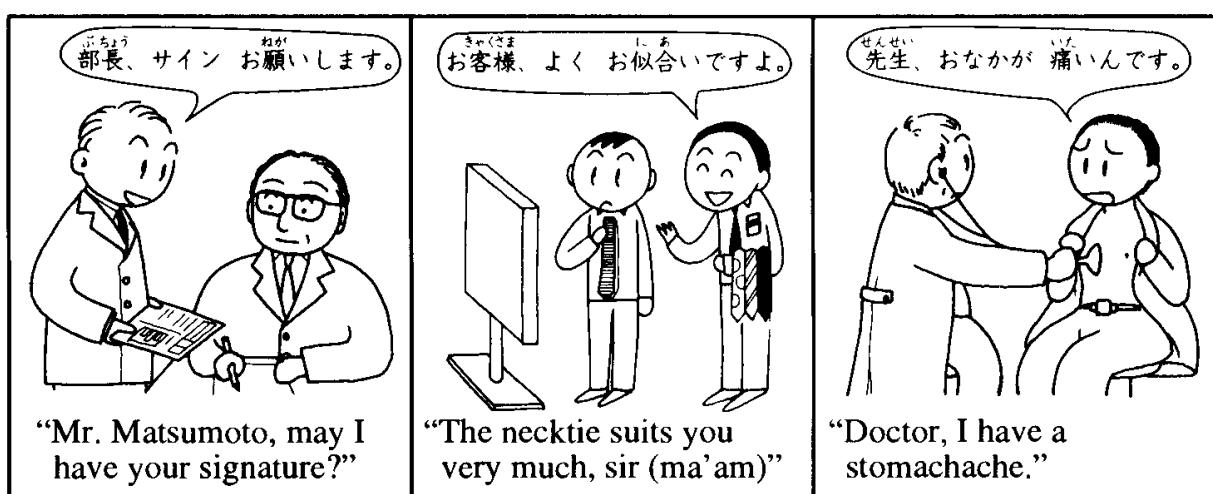


20

In families, people call each other from the viewpoint of the youngest of the family. A parent calls his/her eldest son or daughter “おにいちゃん” (elder brother) or “おねえちゃん” (elder sister) respectively, standing in the position of his/her younger sister or brother.

When parents talk in the presence of their children, the husband calls his wife “おかあさん” or “ママ” (mother), and the wife, her husband “おとうさん” or “パパ” (father). This practice, however, has been changing recently, and the number of couples who call each other by their names is increasing.

129



In society, people call each other by the names of their role in the group to which they belong. At work, a subordinate calls his boss by his job title. At shops a shop assistant calls his/her customer “おきやくさま” (Mr./Ms. customer). Doctors are called “せんせい” (teacher) by their patients.

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Polite style and plain style

Japanese language has two styles of speech: polite style and plain style.

| polite style                                         | plain style                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| あした 東京へ 行きます。<br>I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.        | あした 東京へ 行く。<br>I will go to Tokyo tomorrow.       |
| 毎日 忙しいです。<br>I am busy every day.                    | 毎日 忙しい。<br>I am busy every day.                   |
| 相撲が 好きです。<br>I like sumo.                            | 相撲が 好きだ<br>I like sumo.                           |
| 富士山に 登りたいです。<br>I want to climb Mt. Fuji.            | 富士山に 登りたい。<br>I want to climb Mt. Fuji.           |
| ドイツへ 行った ことが ありません。<br>I have never been to Germany. | ドイツへ 行った ことが ない。<br>I have never been to Germany. |

The predicates which are used in polite style sentences and accompanied by either です or ます are called the polite form, while the predicates used in plain style sentences are called the plain form. (See Main Textbook, Lesson 20, p. 166, 練習 A 1)

### 2. Proper use of the polite style or the plain style

- 1) The polite style can be used at anytime in any place and to anybody. Therefore, the polite style is used most commonly in daily conversation between adults who are not close friends. It is used when talking to a person one has met for the first time, to one's superiors, or even to persons in a similar age group to whom one is not very close. The polite style may be chosen when one talks to a person who is younger or lower in rank yet not so close. The plain style is used when talking to one's close friends, colleagues and family members.  
Note that you need to be careful about how much politeness is needed, basing this on the age of your conversation partner and your type of relationship. If the plain style is used inappropriately, you could sound rough and impolite, so when you cannot tell the situation it is safer to use the polite style.
- 2) The plain style is commonly used in written work. Newspapers, books, theses and diaries are all written in the plain style. Most letters are written in the polite style.

### 3. Conversation in the plain style

1) Questions in the plain style generally omit the particle か, which denotes a question, and end with a rising intonation, such as のむ(↑).

- ① コーヒーを 飲む? (↑)      Do you want a coffee?  
…うん、飲む。 (↓)      …Yes, I do.

2) In noun and な-adjective questions, だ, which is the plain form of です, is omitted. In an answer in the affirmative, ending the sentence with だ could sound too rough. You can either omit だ or add some sentence final particle to soften the tone of the sentence. Women seldom use だ.

- ② 今晚 暇?      Are you free tonight?  
(used by both men and women)  
…うん、暇／暇だ／暇だよ。      …Yes, I am. (used by men)  
…うん、暇／暇よ。      …Yes, I am. (used by women)  
…ううん、暇じゃない。      …No, I am not.  
(used by both men and women)

3) In the plain style, certain particles are often omitted if the meaning of the sentence is evident from the context.

- ③ ごはん [を] 食べる?      Will you take a meal?  
④ あした 京都 [へ] 行かない?  
Won't you come to Kyoto tomorrow with me?

20

- ⑤ このりんご [は] おいしいね。 This apple is tasty, isn't it?

- ⑥ そこにはさみ [が] ある? Is there a pair of scissors there?

で, に, から, まで, ど, etc., however, are not omitted because the meaning of the sentence may not be clear without them.

131

4) In the plain style, い of Vて-form いる is also often dropped.

- ⑦ 辞書、持って [い] る?      Do you have a dictionary?  
…うん、持って [い] る。      … Yes, I do.  
…ううん、持って [い] ない。      … No, I don't.

5) けど

けど has the same function as が, which is used to connect two sentences (see Lesson 8, 7 and Lesson 14, 7). It is often used in conversations.

- ⑧ そのカレーライス [は] おいしい?  
…うん、辛いけど、おいしい。  
Is that curry and rice tasty?

…Yes, it's hot but tasty.

- ⑨ 相撲のチケット [が] あるけど いっしょに行かない?  
…いいね。

I have tickets for sumo. Won't you come with me.

…Sure.

# Lesson 21

## I. Vocabulary

|                    |         |                                  |
|--------------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| おもいます I            | 思います    | think                            |
| いいます I             | 言います    | say                              |
| たります II            | 足ります    | be enough, be sufficient         |
| かちます I             | 勝ちます    | win                              |
| まけます II            | 負けます    | lose, be beaten                  |
| あります I<br>[おまつりが～] | [お祭りが～] | [a festival] be held, take place |
| やくに たちます I         | 役に 立ちます | be useful                        |

|        |       |                                                     |
|--------|-------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| むだ[な]  |       | wasteful                                            |
| ふべん[な] | 不便[な] | inconvenient                                        |
| おなじ    | 同じ    | the same                                            |
| すごい    |       | awful, great (expresses astonishment or admiration) |

|         |      |                                                                 |
|---------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| しゅしょう   | 首相   | prime minister                                                  |
| だいとうりょう | 大統領  | president                                                       |
| せいじ     | 政治   | politics                                                        |
| ニュース    |      | news                                                            |
| スピーチ    |      | speech (~を します: make a speech)                                  |
| しあい     | 試合   | game, match                                                     |
| アルバイト   |      | side job (~を します: work part time)                               |
| いけん     | 意見   | opinion                                                         |
| [お]はなし  | [お]話 | talk, speech, what one says, story (~を します: talk, tell a story) |
| ユーモア    |      | humor                                                           |
| むだ      |      | waste                                                           |
| デザイン    |      | design                                                          |
| こうつう    | 交通   | transportation, traffic                                         |
| ラッシュ    |      | rush hour                                                       |

|       |    |                                   |
|-------|----|-----------------------------------|
| さいきん  | 最近 | recently, these days              |
| たぶん   |    | probably, perhaps, maybe          |
| きっと   |    | surely                            |
| ほんとうに |    | really                            |
| そんなに  |    | not so much (used with negatives) |

～について about ~, concerning ~

しかたが ありません。 There is no other choice./It can't be helped.

## 【会話】

|             |                                                                 |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| しばらくですね。    | It's been a long time (since I last saw you)./Long time no see. |
| ～でも 飲みませんか。 | How about drinking ~ or something?                              |
| 見ないと……。     | I've got to watch it.                                           |
| もちろん        | of course                                                       |



カンガルー  
キャプテン・クック

kangaroo  
Captain James Cook (1728 – 79)

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. I think it will rain tomorrow.
2. The prime minister said that he would go to the U.S.A. next month.

### Example Sentences

1. Which is more important, work or family?  
…I think both are important.
2. What do you think of Japan?  
…I think things are expensive in Japan.
3. Where is Mr. Miller?  
…I think he is in the meeting room.
4. Does Mr. Miller know this news?  
…No, I don't think he does.  
He was on a business trip.
5. Has little Teresa fallen asleep yet?  
…Yes, I think she has.
6. Do you pray before meals?  
…No, we don't, but we say “Itadakimasu.”
7. Did you say something in the meeting?  
…Yes. I said that a lot of photocopying had been wastefully done.
8. In July there will be a festival in Kyoto, won't there?  
…Yes, there will be.

### Conversation

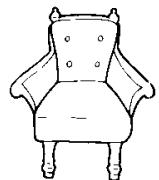
#### I think so, too

- Matsumoto: Mr. Santos, it's been a long time.  
Santos: Mr. Matsumoto, how are you?  
Matsumoto: I'm fine. How about going for a beer or something?  
Santos: That sounds good.
- 
- Santos: There will be a soccer game between Japan and Brazil from ten tonight.  
Matsumoto: Yes, there will. I must be sure to watch it.  
Which team do you think will win?  
Santos: Of course, Brazil.  
Matsumoto: But I tell you recently Japan have got a lot better.  
Santos: I think so, too....  
Oh, it's time that we went home.  
Matsumoto: Yes, it is. Let's go home.

### III. Reference Words & Information

役職名  
やくしょくめい

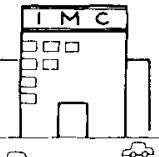
### POSITIONS IN SOCIETY

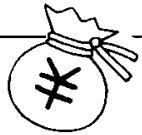
|                |            |              |                              |                                                                                     |
|----------------|------------|--------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 国<br>くに        | nation     | 首相<br>しゅしょう  | (内閣総理大臣)<br>(ない かく そうり だいじん) | prime minister                                                                      |
| 都道府県<br>とどうふけん | prefecture | 知事<br>ちじょう   | governor                     |                                                                                     |
| 市<br>いち        | city       | 市长<br>しょうちょう | mayor                        |                                                                                     |
| 町<br>まち        | town       | 町长<br>まちちょう  | town headman                 |                                                                                     |
| 村<br>むら        | village    | 村长<br>むらちょう  | village headman              |  |

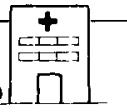
|                  |                    |             |           |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------|-----------|
| 大学<br>だいがく       | university         | 学長<br>がくちょう | president |
| 高等学校<br>こうとうがっこう | senior high school |             |           |
| 中学校<br>ちゅうがっこう   | junior high school | 校長<br>こうちょう | principal |
| 小学校<br>しょうがっこう   | elementary school  |             |           |
| 幼稚園<br>ようちえん     | kindergarten       | 園長<br>えんちょう | director  |

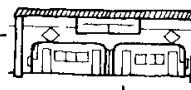
21

135

|            |                  |                                                                                     |
|------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 会社<br>かいしゃ | company          |  |
| 会社<br>かいしゃ | chairman         |                                                                                     |
| 会社<br>かいしゃ | president        |                                                                                     |
| 重部<br>じゅうぶ | director         |                                                                                     |
| 課<br>か     | department chief |                                                                                     |
| 長<br>なが    | section chief    |                                                                                     |

|               |                |                                                                                       |
|---------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 銀行<br>ぎんこう    | bank           |  |
| 頭取<br>とうとり    | president      |                                                                                       |
| 支店長<br>しどんちょう | branch manager |                                                                                       |

|             |                      |                                                                                     |
|-------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 病院<br>びょういん | hospital             |  |
| 院部<br>いんぶ   | director of hospital |                                                                                     |
| 長<br>なが     | department chief     |                                                                                     |
| 婦<br>ふ      | head nurse           |                                                                                     |

|             |                |                                                                                       |
|-------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 駅<br>えき     | station        |  |
| 駅長<br>えきちょう | stationmaster  |                                                                                       |
| 警察<br>けいさつ  | police station |  |
| 署長<br>しょちょう | chief          |                                                                                       |

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. plain form と 思います I think that...

The ideas or information expressed with おもいます are indicated by the particle と.

#### 1) When expressing conjecture

- ① あした 雨が 降ると 思います。 I think it will rain tomorrow.  
② テレサちゃんは もう 寝たと 思います。

I think Teresa has already gone to bed.

When the content of conjecture is negative in nature, make the sentence before と negative.

- ③ ミラーさんは この ニュースを 知って いますか。  
…いいえ、たぶん 知らないと 思います。

Does Mr. Miller know this news?

…No, I don't think he does.

#### 2) When expressing one's opinion

- ④ 日本は 物価が 高いと 思います。

I think that prices are high in Japan.

The expression ～について どう おもいますか is used to ask someone's opinion on something by using おもいます. と is not necessary after どう.

- ⑤ 新しい 空港について どう 思いますか。  
…きれいですが、ちょっと 交通が 不便だと 思います。

What do you think of the new airport?

…I think that it is clean but the access to it is not easy.

Agreement or disagreement with other people's opinions can be expressed as follows.

- ⑥ A : ファクスは 便利ですね。  
B : わたしも そう 思います。  
C : わたしは そう[は] 思いません。  
A : Fax machines are convenient, aren't they?  
B : I think so, too.  
C : I don't think so.

### 2. “S” plain form } と 言います say...

The content expressed with いいます is indicated by the particle と.

#### 1) When quoting directly what someone says or said, repeat exactly what they say as in the following structure.

- ⑦ 寝る まえに 「お休みなさい」と 言います。  
We say "Good night" before going to bed.  
⑧ ミラーさんは 「来週 東京へ 出張します」と 言いました。  
Mr. Miller said "I will go to Tokyo on a business trip next week."

2) When quoting indirectly what someone says or said, the plain form is used before と. The tense of the quoted sentence is not affected by the tense of the main sentence.

⑨ ミラーさんは 来週 東京へ 出張すると 言いました。

Mr. Miller said that he would go to Tokyo on a business trip next week.

|   |                                     |          |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------|
| V | { plain form<br>い-adj<br>な-adj<br>N | } でしょう ? |
|   |                                     |          |
|   |                                     |          |

When the speaker expects that the listener has some knowledge on the topic being discussed and that the listener will agree with the speaker's view, でしょう is said with a rising intonation to confirm the listener's agreement.

⑩ あした パーティーに 行くでしょう ?

…ええ、行きます。

You are going to the party tomorrow, aren't you?

…Yes, I am.

⑪ 北海道は 寒かったでしょう ? It was cold in Hokkaido, wasn't it?

…いいえ、そんなに 寒くなかったです。 …No, it wasn't that cold.

21

#### 4. [ N<sub>1</sub> (place) で N<sub>2</sub> が あります ]

When N<sub>2</sub> expresses such events as a party, concert, festival, incident, disaster and so on, あります means "to take place" or "to be held."

⑫ 東京で 日本と ブラジルの サッカーの 試合が あります。

A football game between Japan and Brazil will be held in Tokyo.

137

#### 5. [ N (occasion) で ]

When some action takes place on a certain occasion, that occasion is followed by で.

⑬ 会議で 何か 意見を 言いましたか。

Did you give your opinion at the meeting?

#### 6. [ N でも V ]

でも is used to give an example out of things of the same kind (drinks in the case of ⑭) when one encourages or advises someone to do something or when one makes a suggestion.

⑭ ちょっと ビールでも 飲みませんか。

Shall we drink beer or something?

#### 7. [ V ない-form ないと…… ]

This expression is made by omitting いけません from V ない-form ないと いけません. V ない-form ないと いけません is similar to V ない-form なければ なりません which you learned in Lesson 17.

⑮ もう 帰らないと……。

I have to go home now.

# Lesson 22

## I. Vocabulary

きます II 着ます put on [a shirt, etc.]  
[シャツを～]

はきます I [くつを～] put on [shoes, trousers, etc.]

かぶります I [ぼうしを～] put on [a hat, etc.]

かけます II [めがねを～] put on [glasses]

うまれます II 生まれます be born

コート coat

スーツ suit

セーター sweater

ぼうし 帽子 hat, cap

めがね 眼鏡 glasses

よく often

おめでとう ございます。 Congratulations. (used on birthdays, at  
weddings, New Year's Day, etc.)

◀会話▶

こちら

this (polite equivalent of これ)

家賃

house rent

うーん。

Let me see.

ダイニングキッチン

kitchen with a dining area

和室

Japanese-style room

押し入れ

Japanese-style closet

布団

Japanese-style mattress and quilt

アパート

apartment



パリ

Paris

万里の 長城

the Great Wall of China

余暇開発センター

Center for Developing Leisure Activities

レジャー白書

white paper on leisure

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. This is a cake Mr. Miller made.
2. That man who is over there is Mr. Miller.
3. I have forgotten the words I learned yesterday.
4. I have no time to go shopping.

### Example Sentences

1. This is a photo I took on the Great Wall of China.  
…Is it? It is superb, isn’t it?
2. Which is the picture Ms. Karina drew?  
…It is that one. That picture of the sea.
3. Who is that woman wearing the kimono?  
…That is Ms. Kimura.
4. Mr. Yamada, where did you first meet your wife?  
…It was Osaka Castle.
5. How was the concert you went to with Ms. Kimura?  
…It was very good.
6. What’s wrong with you?  
…I have lost the umbrella I bought yesterday.
7. What kind of house do you want?  
…I want a house that has a big garden.
8. Would you like to go for a drink this evening?  
…I am sorry, but this evening I have promised to meet a friend.

### Conversation

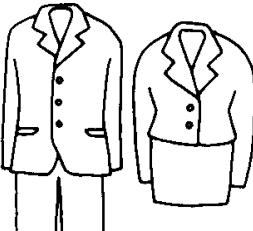
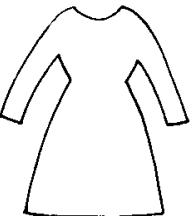
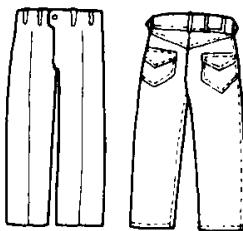
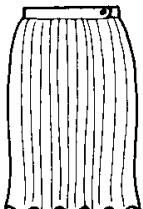
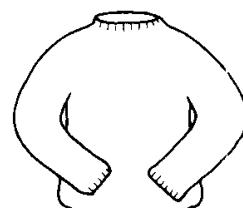
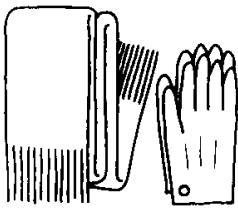
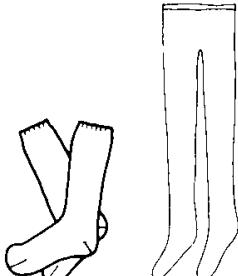
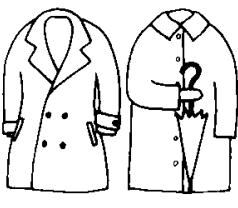
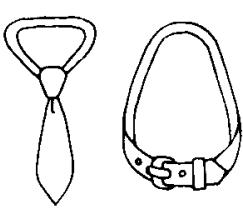
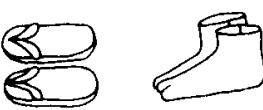
#### What kind of apartment would you like?

- Real estate agent: How about this one?  
The rent is 80,000 yen.
- Wang: Ummmm. It’s far from the station.
- Agent: Then how about this one?  
This one’s convenient. It’s a three-minute walk from the station.
- Wang: Oh.  
A kitchen-dining room, a Japanese-style room, and....  
Excuse me. What is this?
- Agent: It’s an “oshiire.”  
It’s a place to put “futon” in.
- Wang: I see.  
Can I take a look at this apartment today?
- Agent: Yes. Shall we go now?
- Wang: Yes, please.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### 衣服

#### CLOTHES

|                                                                                    |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| スーツ<br>suit                                                                        | ワンピース<br>one-piece dress                                                            | 上着<br>jacket                                                                         | ズボン/パンツ<br>trousers/pants<br>ジーンズ<br>jeans                                            |
|    |    |     |    |
| スカート<br>skirt                                                                      | ブラウス<br>blouse                                                                      | ワイシャツ<br>[white] shirt                                                               | セーター<br>sweater                                                                       |
|  |   |    |   |
| マフラー muffler<br>手袋 gloves                                                          | 下着<br>underwear                                                                     | くつした socks<br>パンスト panty hose, tights                                                | 着物 kimono<br>帯 obi                                                                    |
|  |  |   |  |
| オーバーコート<br>overcoat<br>レインコート<br>raincoat                                          | ネクタイ necktie<br>ベルト belt                                                            | ハイヒール<br>high heels<br>ブーツ boots<br>運動靴 sneakers                                     | ぞうり zori<br>たび tabi                                                                   |
|  |  |  |  |

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. Noun modification

You learned how to modify nouns in Lesson 2 and Lesson 8.

|          |                    |        |
|----------|--------------------|--------|
| ミラーさんのうち | Mr. Miller's house | (L. 2) |
| 新しいうち    | a new house        | (L. 8) |
| きれいなうち   | a beautiful house  | (L. 8) |

In Japanese, whatever modifies a word, whether it's a word or a sentence, it always comes before the word to be modified. Here you learn another way to modify nouns.

### 2. Noun modification by sentences

1) The predicate of the sentence which modifies a noun is in the plain form.

In the case of な-adjective sentences, ~だ becomes ~な. In the case of noun sentences ~だ becomes ~の.

|   |              |   |          |                                         |          |
|---|--------------|---|----------|-----------------------------------------|----------|
| ① | 京都へ          | { | 行く 人     | who goes                                | to Kyoto |
|   |              |   | 行かない 人   | who does not go                         |          |
|   |              |   | 行った 人    | who went                                |          |
|   |              |   | 行かなかった 人 | who did not go                          |          |
|   | 背が高くて、髪が黒い 人 |   |          | a person who is tall and has black hair |          |
|   | 親切で、きれいな 人   |   |          | a person who is kind and pretty         |          |
|   | 65歳の 人       |   |          | a person who is 65 years old            |          |

2) Nouns, which are various elements of the sentence, are picked out of it and can be modified by it.

|   |                               |                                             |
|---|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| ② | わたしは先週 <u>映画</u> を 見ました       | →わたし가 <u>先주</u> <u>смотрел</u> <u>фильм</u> |
|   | I saw a movie last week       | →the movie that I saw last week             |
| ③ | ワンさんは <u>病院</u> で働いて います      | →ワンさんが <u>работает</u> в <u>больнице</u>    |
|   | Mr. Wang works at a hospital  | →the hospital where Mr. Wang works          |
| ④ | わたしはあした <u>友達</u> に 会います      | →わたしが <u>встретится</u> с <u>друзьями</u>   |
|   | I will meet a friend tomorrow | →the friend whom I will meet tomorrow       |

When the nouns underlined in ②, ③ and ④ are modified, the particles を, で, and に attached to them respectively are unnecessary.

3) The noun modified by a sentence ("the house where Mr. Miller lived" in the example sentences below) can be used in various parts of a sentence.

⑤ これは ミラーさんが 住んでいた うちです。

This is the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑥ ミラーさんが 住んでいた うちは 古いです。

The house where Mr. Miller lived is old.

⑦ ミラーさんが 住んでいた うちを 買いました。

I bought the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑧ わたしは ミラーさんが 住んでいた うちが 好きです。

I like the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑨ ミラーさんが 住んでいた うちに 猫が いました。

There was a cat in the house where Mr. Miller lived.

⑩ ミラーさんが 住んでいた うちへ 行った ことがあります。

I have been to the house where Mr. Miller lived.

### 3. Nが

When a sentence modifies a noun, the subject in the sentence is indicated by **が**.

22

ミラーさんは ケーキを 作りました。



Mr. Miller baked a cake.

143

⑪ これは ミラーさんが 作った ケーキです。

This is the cake which Mr. Miller baked.

⑫ わたしは カリナさんが かいた 絵が 好きです。

I like the picture that Ms. Karina drew.

⑬ [あなたは] 彼が 生まれた 所を 知って いますか。

Do you know the place where he was born?

### 4. V dictionary form 時間／約束／用事

When expressing the time for doing some activity, put the dictionary form of the action before **じかん**.

⑭ わたしは 朝ごはんを 食べる 時間が ありません。

I have no time to eat breakfast.

You can also say the content of the arrangement (appointment), etc., by putting the dictionary form of that action before **やくそく**, etc.

⑮ わたしは 友達と 映画を見る 約束が あります。

I have an arrangement to see a movie with a friend of mine.

⑯ きょうは 市役所へ 行く 用事が あります。

I have something to do at the city hall today.

# Lesson 23

## I. Vocabulary

|                      |                 |                                    |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| ききます I<br>[せんせいに～]   | 聞きます<br>[先生に～]  | ask [the teacher]                  |
| まわします I              | 回します            | turn                               |
| ひきます I               | 引きます            | pull                               |
| かえます II              | 変えます            | change                             |
| さわります I<br>[ドアに～]    | 触ります            | touch [a door]                     |
| でます II<br>[おつりが～]    | 出ます<br>[お釣りが～]  | [change] come out                  |
| うごきます I<br>[とけいが～]   | 動きます<br>[時計が～]  | [a watch] move, work               |
| あるきます I<br>[みちを～]    | 歩きます<br>[道を～]   | walk [along a road]                |
| わたります I<br>[はしを～]    | 渡ります<br>[橋を～]   | cross [a bridge]                   |
| きをつけます II<br>[くるまに～] | 気をつけます<br>[車に～] | pay attention [to cars], take care |
| ひっこしします III          | 引っ越しします         | move (house)                       |

|            |           |                                 |
|------------|-----------|---------------------------------|
| でんきや<br>～や | 電気屋<br>～屋 | electrician<br>person of ~ shop |
| サイズ        |           | size                            |
| おと         | 音         | sound                           |
| きかい        | 機械        | machine                         |
| つまみ        |           | knob                            |
| こしょう       | 故障        | breakdown (~します : break down)   |
| みち         | 道         | road, way                       |
| こうさてん      | 交差点       | crossroad                       |
| しんごう       | 信号        | traffic light                   |
| かど         | 角         | corner                          |
| はし         | 橋         | bridge                          |
| ちゅうしゃじょう   | 駐車場       | parking lot, car park           |

ー め

ー 目

the -th (indicating order)

[お] しょ う が つ

[お] 正 月

New Year's Day

ごちそ う さ ま [で し た]。

That was delicious. (said after eating or drinking)

## ◀会話 ▶

たてもの  
建物

がいこくじんとうろくしょう  
外国人登録証

building

alien registration card

~~~~~

しょ う と く たい し  
聖 德 太 子  
は う り く う じ  
法 隆 寺

Prince Shotoku (574 – 622)

Horyuji Temple, a temple in Nara

Prefecture built by Prince Shotoku at the beginning of the 7th century

fictitious tea

fictitious station

fictitious bus stop

げん き ちや  
元 気 茶  
ほん だ え き  
本 田 駅  
ど しょ かん ま え  
図 書 館 前

23

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.
2. Push this button, and change will come out.

### Example Sentences

1. Do you often watch TV?  
…Well, I watch it when there is a baseball game on.
2. What do you do when there is nothing in the refrigerator?  
…I go out and eat something at a nearby restaurant.
3. Did you turn off the air conditioner when you left the meeting room?  
…I am sorry, I forgot.
4. Where do you buy your clothes and shoes, Mr. Santos?  
…I buy them in my country when I go back on summer vacation or New Year vacation.  
Because the things in Japan are small for me.
5. What is that?  
…It's "Genki-cha." I take this when I'm not in good shape.
6. Won't you come to my house when you are free?  
…Thank you. I would love to.
7. Did you work part-time when you were a student?  
…Yes. I sometimes did.
8. The volume is low, isn't it?  
…Turn this knob to the right, and the volume will go up.
9. Excuse me. Where is the City Hall?  
…Go straight down this road, and you will find it on your left.

### Conversation

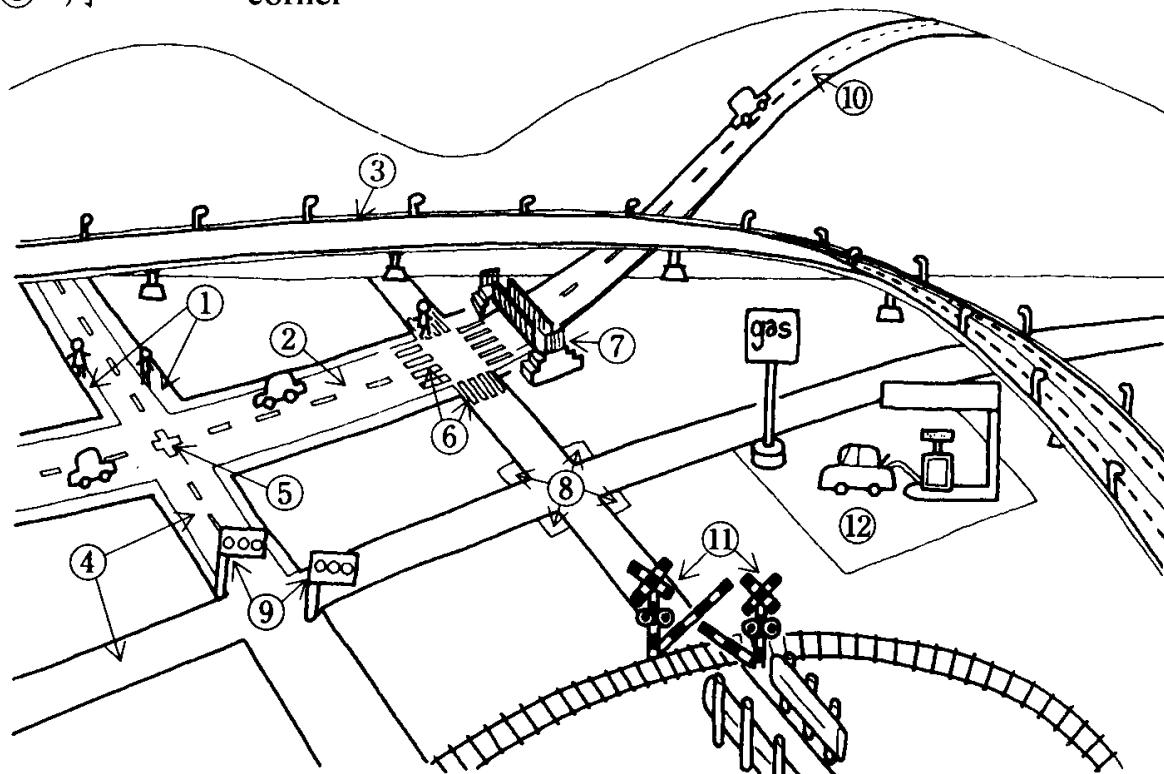
#### How can I get there?

- Librarian: Hello. This is Midori Library.
- Karina: Er, could you tell me how to get there?
- Librarian: Take a No.12 bus from Honda Station, and get off at Toshokan-mae. It's the third stop.
- Karina: The third stop, right?
- Librarian: Yes. When you get off the bus, you will see a park in front of you.
- Our library is the white building in the park.
- Karina: I see.
- Is anything required when I borrow books?
- Librarian: Are you a foreigner?
- Karina: Yes, I am.
- Librarian: Then, please bring your alien registration card.
- Karina: Yes, I will. Thank you very much.

### III. Reference Words & Information

## 道路・交通 ROAD & TRAFFIC

|        |                      |            |                   |
|--------|----------------------|------------|-------------------|
| ① 步道   | sidewalk, pavement   | ⑨ 信号       | traffic light     |
| ② 車道   | road                 | ⑩ 坂        | slope             |
| ③ 高速道路 | expressway, motorway | ⑪ 踏切       | railroad crossing |
| ④ 通り   | street               | ⑫ ガソリンスタンド | gas station       |
| ⑤ 交差点  | crossing             |            |                   |
| ⑥ 横断歩道 | pedestrian crossing  |            |                   |
| ⑦ 歩道橋  | pedestrian bridge    |            |                   |
| ⑧ 角    | corner               |            |                   |



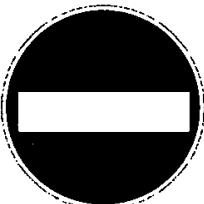
23

147

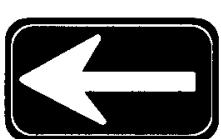
止まれ  
stop



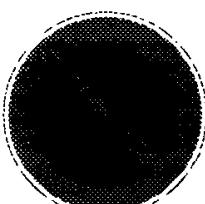
進入禁止  
no entry



一方通行  
one way



駐車禁止  
no parking



右折禁止  
no turning right



## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. V dictionary form

V ない-form

い-adj (~い)

な-adj な

N の

とき、～

When..., ...

とき connects two sentences and expresses the time when the state or action described in the main sentence exists or occurs. As shown in the table above, the forms of verbs, い-adjectives, な-adjectives and nouns connected to とき are the same as the forms when modifying nouns.

① 図書館で 本を 借りる とき、カードが 要ります。

When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.

② 使い方が わからない とき、わたしに 聞いて ください。

When you don't know how to use it, ask me.

③ 体の 調子が 悪い とき、「元気茶」を 飲みます。

When I'm not in good shape, I drink "Genki-cha."

④ 暇な とき、うちへ 遊びに 来ませんか。

Won't you come to my place when you are free?

⑤ 妻が 病気の とき、会社を 休みます。

When my wife is sick, I take a day off work.

⑥ 若い とき、あまり 勉強しませんでした。

When I was young, I did not study much.

⑦ 子どもの とき、よく 川で 泳ぎました。

I used to swim in a river when I was a child.

The tense of adjective sentences and noun sentences which modify とき is not affected by the tense of the main sentence (see ⑥ and ⑦).

### 2. V dictionary form

V た-form } とき、～

When the dictionary form of the predicate is put before とき it indicates the non-completion of the action, and when the た-form of the predicate is put before とき it indicates the completion of the action.

⑧ 国へ 帰る とき、かばんを 買いました。

I bought a bag when I went back to my country.

⑨ 国へ 帰った とき、かばんを 買いました。

I bought a bag when I went back to my country.

In ⑧, かえる indicates that at the time being referred to the action had not been completed, that the speaker had not reached his/her country yet and that he/she bought a bag somewhere on his/her way there (Japan is included). In ⑨, かえった indicates that the action was completed and the speaker bought a bag after arriving in his/her country.

### 3. **V dictionary form と、～** ..., then (inevitably)...

When expressing the situation where, as a result of a certain action, another action or matter inevitably happens, と is used to connect the sentences.

- ⑩ この ボタンを 押すと、お釣りが 出ます。

Press this button, and the change will come out.

- ⑪ これを 回すと、音が 大きく なります。

Turn this, and the volume will go up.

- ⑫ 右へ 曲がると、郵便局が あります。

Turn to the right, and you will find the post office.

Expressions of one's will, hope, invitation or request cannot be used in the sentence which follows ～と.

|            |                 |              |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|
| × 時間が あると、 | 映画を 見に 行きます。    | (will)       |
|            | 映画を 見に 行きたいです。  | (hope)       |
|            | 映画を 見に 行きませんか。  | (invitation) |
|            | ちょっと 手伝って ください。 | (request)    |

In those cases, the conditional expression ～たら is used instead of ～と (see Lesson 25).

### 4. **N が adjective / V**

You learned in Lesson 14 that the subject is indicated by が when describing a natural phenomenon. When describing a state or a scene as it is, the subject is also indicated by が.

- ⑬ 音が 小さいです。

The volume is low.

- ⑭ 電気が 明るく なりました。

The light became brighter.

- ⑮ この ボタンを 押すと、切符が 出ます。

Press this button, and a ticket will come out.

### 5. **N (place) を V (verb of movement)**

The particle を is used to denote the place where a person or a thing passes.

The verb of movement such as さんぽします, わたります, あるきます, etc. are used in this pattern.

- ⑯ 公園を 散歩します。

I take a walk in the park. (L. 13)

- ⑰ 道を 渡ります。

I cross the road.

- ⑱ 交差点を 右へ 曲がります。

I turn to the right at the intersection.

# Lesson 24

## I. Vocabulary

|              |         |                           |
|--------------|---------|---------------------------|
| くれます Ⅱ       |         | give (me)                 |
| つれていきます I    | 連れて行きます | take (someone)            |
| つれてきます III   | 連れて来ます  | bring (someone)           |
| おくります I      | 送ります    | escort [someone], go with |
| [ひとを～]       | [人を～]   |                           |
| しょうかいします III | 紹介します   | introduce                 |
| あんないします III  | 案内します   | show around, show the way |
| せつめいします III  | 説明します   | explain                   |
| いれます Ⅱ       |         | make [coffee]             |
| [コーヒーを～]     |         |                           |

|              |       |                             |
|--------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| おじいさん／おじいちゃん |       | grandfather, old man        |
| おばあさん／おばあちゃん |       | grandmother, old woman      |
| じゅんび         | 準備    | preparation (~します: prepare) |
| いみ           | 意味    | meaning                     |
| [お]かし        | [お]菓子 | sweets, snacks              |
| ぜんぶ          | 全部    | all                         |
| じぶんで         | 自分で   | by oneself                  |

◀会話▶

ほかに  
ワゴン車  
[お]弁当

besides  
station wagon  
box lunch

母の日

Mother's Day

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. Ms. Sato gave me a Christmas card.
2. I lent Ms. Kimura a book.
3. I was told the telephone number of the hospital by Mr. Yamada.
4. My mother sent me a sweater.

### Example Sentences

1. Do you like your grandmother, Taro?  
…Yes, I do. She always gives me some sweets.
2. This is very delicious wine.  
…Yes. Ms. Sato gave it to me. It's French wine.
3. Taro, what will you do for your mother on Mother's Day?  
…I will play the piano for her.
4. Mr. Miller, did you cook all the dishes for the party yesterday by yourself?  
…No, Mr. Wang helped me.
5. Did you go by train?  
…No, Mr. Yamada drove me.

### Conversation

#### Will you help me?

- Karina: Mr. Wang, you are moving house tomorrow, aren't you?  
Shall I come to help you?
- Wang: Thank you.  
Well, then, will you come around 9 o'clock?
- Karina: Who else will come to help you?
- Wang: Mr. Yamada and Mr. Miller are coming.
- Karina: What about a car?
- Wang: Mr. Yamada will lend me his station wagon.
- Karina: What about lunch?
- Wang: Well....
- Karina: Shall I bring lunch?
- Wang: Thank you. Please.
- Karina: Then see you tomorrow.

### III. Reference Words & Information

ぞうとう しゅうかん  
贈答の習慣

### EXCHANGE OF PRESENTS

お年玉  
とし だま

small gift of money given by parents and relatives to children on New Year's Day

入学祝い  
にゅう がく いわ

gift celebrating admission to schools

卒業祝い  
さつ ぎょう いわ

graduation gift (money, stationery, book, etc.)

結婚祝い  
けつこん いわ

wedding gift (money, household goods, etc.)

出産祝い  
じゅっさん いわ

gift celebrating a birth (baby clothes, toys, etc.)

お中元 [Jul. or Aug.]

gift for a person whose care you are under, e.g., doctor, teacher, boss, etc. (food, etc.)

お歳暮 [Dec.]

24

お香典  
こうでん

condolence money

お見舞い  
みまい

present given when visiting a sick person (flowers, fruits, etc.)

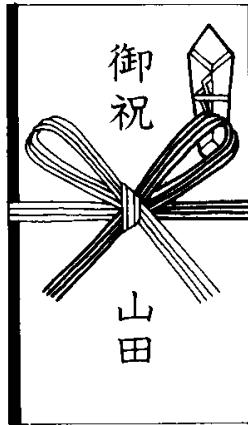


熨斗袋 Special Envelope for Gift of Money

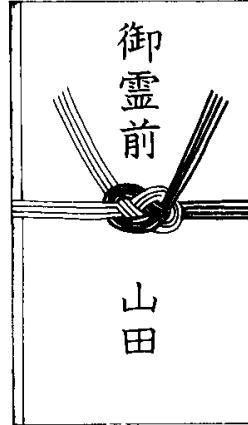
There are several kinds of special envelopes called NOSHIBUKURO. According to the occasion, a suitable one should be chosen.



for weddings  
(with red and white, or gold and silver ribbon)



for celebrations other than  
weddings  
(with red and white, or gold and silver ribbon)



for funerals  
(with black and white ribbon)

153

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. くれます

You learned that あげます means “give” in Lesson 7. This verb cannot be used when somebody else gives something to the speaker or the speaker’s family, etc. (×さとうさんはわたしに クリスマスカードを あげました). In this case くれます is used.

①わたしは 佐藤さんに 花を あげました。

I gave flowers to Ms. Sato.

②佐藤さんは わたしに クリスマスカードを くれました。

Ms. Sato gave me a Christmas card.

③佐藤さんは 妹に お菓子を くれました。

Ms. Sato gave candies to my younger sister.

### 2.

|          |                         |
|----------|-------------------------|
| V て-form | { あげます<br>もらいます<br>くれます |
|----------|-------------------------|

あげます, もらいます and くれます are also used to refer to the giving and receiving of actions as well as those of things. They indicate who is doing that act for whom, while also expressing a sense of goodwill or gratitude. In this case, the act is expressed by the て-form.

#### 1) **V て-form あげます**

V て-form あげます indicates that one does something for somebody with a sense of goodwill.

④わたしは 木村さんに 本を 貸して あげました。

I lent Ms. Kimura a book.

When the speaker is the actor and the listener is the receiver of the act, this expression could give the impression that the speaker is being patronizing. You are, therefore, advised to avoid using this expression directly to someone whom you do not know very well or who is senior or superior to you. You may use it to someone with whom you have a very close, friendly relationship. So, when you offer assistance to someone who is not very close, V ます-formましょうか (see Lesson 14, 6) is used.

⑤タクシーを 呼びましょうか。 Shall I call a taxi for you? (L. 14)

⑥手伝いましょうか。 May I help you? (L. 14)

## 2) Vて-form もらいます

⑦ わたしは 山田さんに 図書館の 電話番号を 教えて もらいました。  
Mr. Yamada told me the telephone number of the library.

This expression conveys a sense of gratitude on the part of those who receive a favor.

## 3) Vて-form くれます

⑧ 母は [わたしに] セーターを 送って くれました。

My mother sent me a sweater.

Like Vて-form もらいます, this expression also conveys a sense of gratitude on the part of those who receive a favor. The difference is that Vて-form もらいます has the receiver of the act as the subject of the sentence, while Vて-form くれます has the actor as the subject of the sentence, implying the actor (the subject) voluntarily takes the action. The receiver of the act in the latter case is often the speaker and わたし(the receiver)に is often omitted.

## 3. N(person)が V

⑨ すてきな ネクタイですね。 That's a nice tie, isn't it?

…ええ、佐藤さんが くれました。 …Yes. Ms. Sato gave it to me.

You present a topic, saying すてきな ネクタイですね. Responding to it, your partner in conversation gives a piece of information on the topic which is unknown to you, [この ネクタイは] さとうさんが くれました. The subject of the sentence giving new information is indicated by が.

## 4. Interrogative が V

You learned that when the subject is questioned, it is indicated by が in あります/います sentences (Lesson 10) and adjective sentences (Lesson 12). This is also the case for verb sentences.

⑩ だれが 手伝いに 行きますか。 Who will go to give him a hand?

…カリナさんが 行きます。 …Ms. Karina will.

# Lesson 25

## I. Vocabulary

|                  |               |                         |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| かんがえます Ⅱ         | 考えます          | think, consider         |
| つきます I<br>[えきに～] | 着きます<br>[駅に～] | arrive [at the station] |
| りゅうがくします Ⅲ       | 留学します         | study abroad            |
| とります I<br>[としを～] | 取ります<br>[年を～] | grow old                |
| いなか              | 田舎            | countryside, hometown   |
| たいしかん            | 大使館           | embassy                 |
| グループ             |               | group                   |
| チャンス             |               | chance                  |
| おく               | 億             | hundred million         |
| もし [～たら]         |               | if ~                    |
| いくら [～ても]        |               | however ~, even if ~    |

◀会話▶

転勤  
てんきん

transfer (~します: be transferred to another office)

こと  
いっぽい  
一杯 飲みましょう。

thing, matter (~のこと: thing about ~)  
Let's have a drink together.

[いろいろ] お世話になりました。Thank you for everything you have done for me.

頑張ります I

do one's best

どうぞ お元氣で。

Best of luck. (said when expecting a long separation)

## II. Translation

### Sentence Patterns

1. If it rains, I will not go out.
2. Even if it rains, I will go out.

### Example Sentences

1. If you had a hundred million yen, what would you like to do?  
…I would want to build a computer software company.
2. What will you do if your friend doesn't come at the time he promised?  
…I will go home immediately.
3. That new shoe shop has a lot of good shoes.  
…Does it? If their prices are reasonable, I would like to buy some.
4. Do I have to submit the report by tomorrow?  
…No. If it's not possible, submit it on Friday.
5. Have you thought of a name for your baby yet?  
…Yes. If it is a boy, he will be named “Hikaru,” and if it is a girl, she will be named “Aya.”
6. Will you start work straightaway after you graduate from university?  
…No, I want to travel to various countries for about one year.
7. Excuse me, ma'am. But I don't understand the meaning of this word.  
…Did you check it in the dictionary?  
Yes, I did. I still don't get it.
8. Japanese people are fond of traveling in groups, aren't they?  
…Yes, they are, because it is economical.  
No matter how economical it is, I don't like group tours.

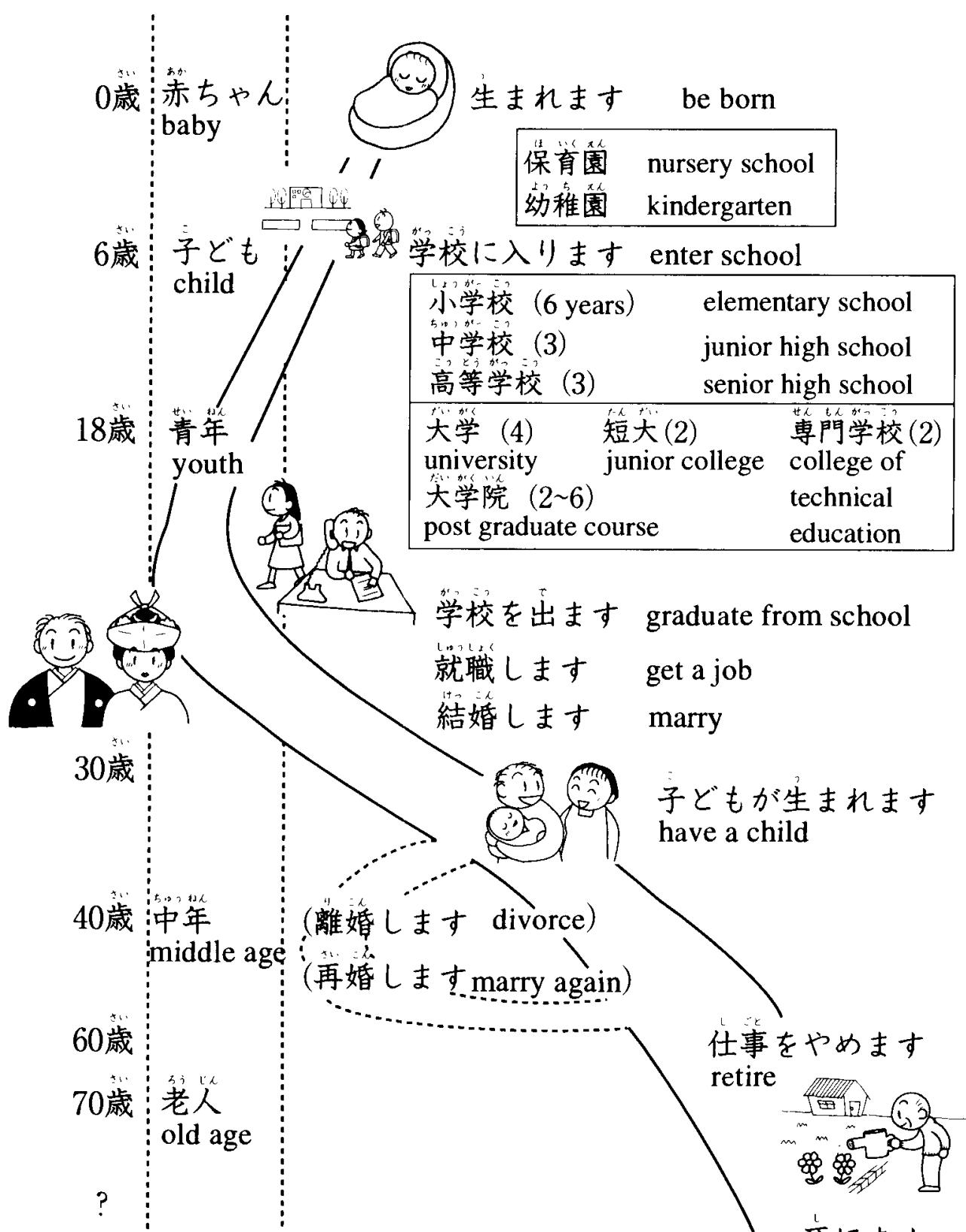
### Conversation

#### Thank you for having been kind to me

- Yamada: Congratulations! You are going to be transferred.
- Miller: Thank you.
- Kimura: When you leave for Tokyo, we will miss you.  
Don't forget about Osaka after you go to Tokyo.
- Miller: Of course. Ms. Kimura, if you have time, please come to Tokyo.
- Santos: Mr. Miller, when you come to Osaka, give me a call.  
Let's have a drink.
- Miller: I'd love to.  
Thank you very much, all of you, for having been kind to me.
- Sato: Please take care of yourself and do your best.
- Miller: Yes, I will do my best. Best of luck, all of you.

### III. Reference Words & Information

#### ひとの一生 LIFE



#### Life Expectancy of the Japanese

men 77.01

women 83.59

(1996, Ministry of Health and Welfare)

## IV. Grammar Explanation

### 1. plain past form ら、～ If...

When ら is attached to the past tense plain form of verbs, adjectives, etc., it changes the preceding clause into a conditional expression. When a speaker wants to state his opinion, situation, request, etc., in the conditional, this pattern is used.

① お金が あったら、旅行します。

If I had money, I would travel.

② 時間が なかつたら、テレビを 見ません。

If I don't have time, I will not watch TV.

③ 安かつたら、パソコンを 買いたいです。

If it's inexpensive, I want to buy a personal computer.

④ 暇だつたら、手伝って ください。

If you are free, please give me a hand.

⑤ いい 天気だつたら、散歩しませんか。

If it's fine, won't you take a walk with me?

25

### 2. V た-form ら、～ When...／After...

This pattern is used to express that a certain action will be done or a certain situation will appear when a matter, action or state which is sure to happen in the future has been completed or achieved. The main sentence is always in the present tense.

⑥ 10時に なつたら、出かけましょう。

Let's go out when it gets to ten.

⑦ うちに 帰つたら、すぐ シャワーを 浴びます。

I take a shower soon after I return home.

### 3. V て-form

い-adj (~YX) → ~くて  
な-adj [な] → で  
Nで

Even if...

This expression is used to present a reverse condition. Contrary to plain past form ら、～, this expression is used when an action which is expected to be taken or an event which is expected to happen naturally under the given circumstances does not materialize or a thing turns out in a way opposite to a socially accepted idea.

- ⑧ 雨が 降っても、洗濯します。  
Even if it rains, I'll do the laundry.
- ⑨ 安くとも、わたしは グループ旅行が 嫌いです。  
Even if group tours are inexpensive, I don't like them.
- ⑩ 便利でも、パソコンを 使いません。  
Even if a personal computer is useful, I won't use it.
- ⑪ 日曜日でも、働きます。  
Even if it is Sunday, I will work.

#### 4. もし and いくら

もし is used in a sentence in the plain past form to indicate beforehand that the sentence is going to present a condition, while いくら is used with ~ても(～でも) to do the same. もし implies that an emphasis is on the speaker's supposition while いくら is meant to stress the degree of conditionality.

- ⑫ もし 1億円 あつたら、いろいろな 国を 旅行したいです。  
If I had 100 million yen, I would want to travel in various countries.
- ⑬ いくら 考えても、わかりません。  
No matter how much I think, I can't understand this.
- ⑭ いくら 高くとも、買います。  
No matter how expensive it is, I will buy it.

#### 5. **Nが**

As mentioned in Lesson 16, 4. [Note], the subject of a subordinate clause is indicated by が. In subordinate clauses using たら, ても, とき, と, まえに, etc., in addition to から, the subject is indicated by が, as shown below.

- ⑮ 友達が 来る まえに、部屋を 掃除します。  
I will clean my room before my friends come. (L. 18)
- ⑯ 妻が 病気の とき、会社を 休みます。  
When my wife is sick, I take a day off work. (L. 23)
- ⑰ 友達が 約束の 時間に 来なかつたら、どう しますか。  
If your friend doesn't come on time, what will you do? (L. 25)



# SUMMARY LESSON

## I. Particles

### 1. [は]

- |    |   |            |
|----|---|------------|
| A: | 1) I am Mike Miller.                        | (Lesson 1) |
|    | 2) I get up at six in the morning.          | (4)        |
|    | 3) Cherry blossoms are beautiful.           | (8)        |
| B: | 1) What time is it now in New York?         | (4)        |
|    | 2) On Sunday I went to Nara with a friend.  | (6)        |
|    | 3) Tokyo Disneyland is in Chiba Prefecture. | (10)       |
|    | 4) Please send the data by fax.             | (17)       |

### 2. [も]

- |    |                                      |      |
|----|--------------------------------------|------|
| A: | 1) Maria is Brazilian, too.          | (1)  |
|    | 2) Please send this parcel, too.     | (11) |
|    | 3) I like both.                      | (12) |
|    | 4) I have been on a diet many times. | (19) |
| B: | 1) I did not go anywhere.            | (5)  |
|    | 2) I did not eat anything.           | (6)  |
|    | 3) There was no one.                 | (10) |

163

### 3. [の]

- |    |  |      |
|----|--|------|
| A: | 1) That person is Mr. Miller of IMC.           | (1)  |
|    | 2) This is a book on computers.                | (2)  |
|    | 3) That is my umbrella.                        | (2)  |
|    | 4) This is a Japanese car.                     | (3)  |
|    | 5) Did you study last night?                   | (4)  |
|    | 6) How are your Japanese studies going?        | (8)  |
|    | 7) There is a picture on the desk.             | (10) |
|    | 8) Please tell me how to read this Kanji.      | (14) |
|    | 9) I came from Bandung, Indonesia.             | (16) |
| B: | 1) This bag is Ms. Sato's.                     | (2)  |
|    | 2) Where was this camera made?<br>...In Japan. | (3)  |
| C: | Is there one a little bigger?                  | (14) |

### 4. [を]

- |    |  |      |
|----|--|------|
| A: | 1) I drink juice.                          | (6)  |
|    | 2) I am going to travel for a week.        | (11) |
|    | 3) I will pick up my child at two o'clock. | (13) |

- B: 1) I took a day off work yesterday. (11)  
   2) I leave home at eight every morning. (13)  
   3) I get off the train at Kyoto. (16)
- C: 1) I take a walk in a park every morning. (13)  
   2) Please cross at that traffic signal. (23)  
   3) Go straight along this street and you will find the station. (23)

## 5. [カギ]

- A: 1) I like Italian food. (9)  
   2) Mr. Miller is good at cooking. (9)  
   3) I understand Japanese a little. (9)  
   4) Do you have any small change? (9)  
   5) I have two children. (11)  
   6) I want a personal computer. (13)  
   7) Can you ski? (18)  
   8) I need a tape recorder. (20)
- B: 1) There is a man over there. (10)  
   2) There is a picture on the desk. (10)  
   3) There will be a festival in Kyoto next month. (21)
- C: 1) Tokyo has a big population. (12)  
   2) Mr. Santos is tall. (16)  
   3) I have a sore throat. (17)
- D: 1) Which is faster, a bus or a train?  
       …A train is faster. (12)  
   2) Baseball is the most interesting of all the sports. (12)
- E: 1) It is raining now. (14)  
   2) Touch this, and the water will come out. (23)  
   3) The volume is low. (23)
- F: 1) I am going to go and have a meal after the concert is over. (16)  
   2) What will you do if your friend does not come on time? (25)  
   3) When my wife is sick, I take a day off work. (23)  
   4) Which is the picture that Ms. Karina drew? (22)
- G: 1) Ms. Sato gave me wine. (24)  
   2) Who paid for you? (24)

## 6. [に]

- A: 1) I get up at six o'clock in the morning. (4)  
   2) I came to Japan on March 25th. (5)
- B: 1) I gave some flowers to Ms. Kimura. (7)  
   2) I write Christmas cards to my family and friends. (7)

- C: 1) I received a gift from Mr. Santos. (7)  
   2) I borrowed a book from a person in the company. (7)
- D: 1) There is a picture on the desk. (10)  
   2) My family is in New York. (10)  
   3) Maria lives in Osaka. (15)
- E: 1) I will meet a friend tomorrow. (6)  
   2) Have you already got accustomed to living in Japan? (8)  
   3) Let's go in that coffee shop. (13)  
   4) Please sit here. (15)  
   5) I take a train from Umeda. (16)  
   6) Please write your name here. (14)  
   7) Touch this, and the water will come out. (23)
- F: I play tennis once a week. (11)
- G: 1) I came to Japan to study economics. (13)  
   2) I will go to Kyoto for cherry blossom viewing. (13)
- H: Teresa became ten. (19)

165

## 7. [^]

- 1) I will go to Kyoto with a friend. (5)  
   2) I will go to France to study cooking. (13)  
   3) Please turn right at that traffic light. (14)

## 8. [で]

- A: 1) I go home by taxi. (5)  
   2) I send the data by fax. (7)  
   3) Do you write reports in Japanese? (7)
- B: 1) I buy a newspaper at the station. (6)  
   2) In July there is a festival in Kyoto. (21)
- C: I like summer the best of the year. (12)

## 9. [と]

- A: 1) I came to Japan with my family. (5)  
   2) Ms. Sato is talking with the department chief in the meeting room. (14)
- B: 1) I have Saturdays and Sundays off. (4)  
   2) The book store is between a florist's and a supermarket. (10)  
   3) Which is more interesting, football or baseball? (12)
- C: 1) I think it will rain tomorrow. (21)  
   2) The prime minister said that he would go to America next month. (21)

## 10. [や]

- There are old letters, pictures and things in the box. (10)

## 11. [から] [まで]

- A: 1) I work from nine to five. (4)  
2) The bank is open from nine to three. (4)  
3) I worked until ten last night. (4)
- B: 1) Chili sauce is on the second rack from the bottom. (10)  
2) It takes four hours to fly from my country to Japan. (11)  
3) Shall I come and get you at the station? (14)

## 12. [までに]

I have to return the books by Saturday. (17)

## 13. [より]

China is bigger than Japan. (12)

## 14. [でも]

Shall we drink a glass of beer or something? (21)

## 15. [か]

- A: 1) Is Mr. Santos Brazilian? (1)  
2) Is it a mechanical pencil or a ballpoint pen? (2)  
3) Shall we go and see a film together? (6)
- B: Excuse me. Where is Yunyu-ya store?  
…Yunyu-ya store? It's in that building. (10)
- C: Is this umbrella yours?  
…No, it isn't. It's Mr. Schmidt's.  
I see. (2)

## 16. [ね]

- 1) I studied until twelve last night, too.  
…That's tough, isn't it? (4)
- 2) That spoon looks nice, doesn't it? (7)
- 3) Well, …let me see, it's 871-6813.  
…871-6813, right? (4)
- 4) You see the man over there. Who is he? (10)

## 17. [よ]

Does this train go to Koshien?  
…No. The next local train does. (5)

## II. How to Use the Forms

### 1. [ます-form]

|              |                                  |            |
|--------------|----------------------------------|------------|
| ます-formませんか  | Won't you have some tea with me? | (Lesson 6) |
| ます-formましょう  | Let's meet at five.              | (6)        |
| ます-formたいです  | I want to buy a camera.          | (13)       |
| ます-formにいきます | I go to see a movie.             | (13)       |
| ます-formましょうか | Shall I call a taxi for you?     | (14)       |

### 2. [て-form]

|                 |   |      |
|-----------------|---|------|
| て-formください      | Please lend me your ballpoint pen.                                  | (14) |
| て-formいます       | Ms. Sato is now talking with Mr. Miller.                            | (14) |
| て-formもいいです     | Maria lives in Osaka.   | (15) |
| て-formはいけません    | May I smoke?  | (15) |
| て-formから、～      | Don't take photographs in the museum.                               | (15) |
| て-form、て-form、～ | After I finish work, I go swimming.                                 | (16) |
| て-formあげます      | In the morning, I go jogging, take a shower, then go to the office. | (16) |
| て-formもらいます     | I lend a CD to Mr. Miller.  | (24) |
| て-formくれます      | Ms. Sato took me to Osaka Castle.                                   | (24) |
|                 | Mr. Yamada took me in his car.                                      | (24) |

167

### 3. [ない-form]

|                  |  |      |
|------------------|--|------|
| ない-formないでください   | Please do not take photographs here.   | (17) |
| ない-formなければなりません | You must show your passport.           | (17) |
| ない-formなくてもいいです  | You don't need to take off your shoes. | (17) |

### 4. [dictionary form]

|                           |   |      |
|---------------------------|---|------|
| dictionary form することができます | I can play the piano.                             | (18) |
| dictionary form ことです      | My hobby is watching movies.                      | (18) |
| dictionary form まえに、～     | I read a book before going to bed.                | (18) |
| dictionary form と、～       | Turn to the right, and you'll find a post office. | (23) |

### 5. [た-form]

|                    |  |      |
|--------------------|--|------|
| た-form ことがあります     | I have been to Hokkaido.                               | (19) |
| た-formり、た-formりします | On my holidays I play tennis, take walks and so forth. | (19) |

## 6. [plain form]

plain form と おもいます

plain form と いいます

verb

い-adjective

な-adjective

noun

verb plain form noun

plain form

plain form

～だ

でしょう?

I think that Mr. Miller has already gone home. (21)  
I think that things are expensive in Japan. (21)  
I think that family is the most important thing. (21)

My brother said that he would return by ten. (21)  
Tomorrow you will go to the party, won't you? (21)  
The morning rush hours are terrible, aren't they? (21)  
Personal computers are useful, aren't they? (21)  
He is American, isn't he? (21)  
This is the cake that I made. (22)

## 7. verb plain form

い-adjective  
な-adjective な  
noun の

とき、～

When I read a paper, I put on my glasses. (23)  
When I am sleepy, I drink coffee. (23)  
When I have time, I watch video tapes. (23)  
When it rains, I take a taxi. (23)

## 8. plain form past ら、～

If I have a personal computer, it'll be convenient. (25)  
If the personal computer is cheap, I will buy it. (25)  
If it's simple to use, I will buy it. (25)  
If it's fine, I'll take a walk. (25)

## 9. verb て-form

い-adjective ～くて  
な-adjective で  
noun で

ても、～

Though I've checked in the dictionary, I don't understand its meaning. (25)  
Even if personal computers are cheap, I won't buy one. (25)  
Even if you don't like it, you should eat it. (25)  
He works even on Sundays. (25)

### III. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions

|           |       |  |             |
|-----------|-------|--|-------------|
| <b>1.</b> | みんな   | The foreign teachers are all Americans.                | (Lesson 11) |
|           | ぜんぶ   | I have finished all my homework.                       | (24)        |
|           | たくさん  | I have a lot of work.                                  | (9)         |
|           | とても   | It is very cold in Beijing.                            | (8)         |
|           | よく    | Mr. Wang understands English well.                     | (9)         |
|           | だいたい  | Teresa understands most Hiragana.                      | (9)         |
|           | すこし   | Maria understands Katakana a little.                   | (9)         |
|           | ちょっと  | Let's take a rest for a while.                         | (6)         |
|           | もうすこし | Don't you have one a little bit smaller?               | (14)        |
|           | もう    | Make one more copy, please.                            | (14)        |
|           | ずっと   | There are a lot more people in Tokyo than in New York. | (12)        |
|           | いちばん  | I like tempura best of all Japanese dishes.            | (12)        |
|           |       | Notebooks are on the top of that shelf.                | (10)        |
| <b>2.</b> | いつも   | I always have lunch in the university dining hall.     | (6)         |
|           | ときどき  | I sometimes eat at a restaurant.                       | (6)         |
|           | よく    | Mr. Miller often goes to coffee shops.                 | (22)        |
|           | はじめて  | Yesterday I ate sushi for the first time.              | (12)        |
|           | また    | Please come again tomorrow.                            | (14)        |
|           | もういちど | Once again, please.                                    | (II)        |
| <b>3.</b> | いま    | It is now ten past two.                                | (4)         |
|           | すぐ    | Please send the report at once.                        | (14)        |
|           | もう    | I have already bought my Shinkansen ticket.            | (7)         |
|           |       | It's eight o'clock now, isn't it?                      | (8)         |
|           | まだ    | Have you had lunch?<br>...No, not yet.                 | (7)         |
|           | これから  | I'm going to take lunch from now.                      | (7)         |
|           | そろそろ  | It is almost time for me to leave.                     | (8)         |
|           | あとで   | I will come later.                                     | (14)        |
|           | まず    | First, push this button.                               | (16)        |
|           | つぎに   | Next, insert the card.                                 | (16)        |
|           | さいきん  | Recently Japanese football teams have become stronger. | (21)        |
| <b>4.</b> | じぶんで  | I cooked all the dishes for the party by myself.       | (24)        |
|           | ひとりで  | I go to the hospital alone.                            | (5)         |
|           | みんなで  | We will go to Kyoto all together tomorrow.             | (20)        |
|           | いっしょに | Won't you drink some beer with me?                     | (6)         |
|           | べつべつに | Please charge us separately.                           | (13)        |
|           | ぜんぶで  | It is five hundred yen in all.                         | (11)        |

|        |  |      |
|--------|--|------|
| ほかに    | Who will come to help you other than me?                               | (24) |
| はやく    | I'll go home early.  | (9)  |
| ゆっくり   | Please speak slowly.   | (14) |
| だんだん   | Have a good rest, today.   | (17) |
| まっすぐ   | It will get hotter and hotter from now on.                             | (19) |
| 5. あまり | Please go straight.  | (14) |
| ぜんぜん   | That dictionary is not very good.                                      | (8)  |
| なかなか   | I don't understand Indonesian at all.                                  | (9)  |
| いちども   | You can hardly ever see horses in Japan.                               | (18) |
| ぜひ     | I have never eaten sushi.  | (19) |
| たぶん    | I am eager to go to Hokkaido.  | (18) |
| きっと    | I think Mr. Miller probably doesn't know.                              | (21) |
| もし     | I am sure it will be fine tomorrow.                                    | (21) |
| いくら    | If I had one hundred million yen, I would like to form my own company. | (25) |
|        | However cheap group tours are, I don't like them.                      | (25) |
| 6. とくに | In that film, the father, especially, acted well.                      | (15) |
| じつは    | I am on a diet actually.   | (19) |
| ほんとうに  | I think food really costs a lot in Japan.                              | (21) |
| もちろん   | I think Brazil will win the game, of course.                           | (21) |

## IV. Various Conjunctions

- |                |   |            |
|----------------|---|------------|
| <b>1.</b> そして  | Subways in Tokyo are clean and convenient.  | (Lesson 8) |
| ～で             | Nara is a quiet and beautiful city.   | (16)       |
| ～くて            | This personal computer is light and handy.  | (16)       |
| それから           | Send this by special delivery, please. And this parcel, too.  | (11)       |
| ～たり            | On holidays I play tennis, go on walks and so on.   | (19)       |
| ～が             | Excuse me, but lend me a ballpoint pen, please.   | (14)       |
| <b>2.</b> それから | I studied Japanese, and then saw a movie.   | (6)        |
| ～てから           | We dined at a restaurant after the concert was over.  | (16)       |
| ～て、～て          | In the morning I jog, take a shower, and go to the office.  | (16)       |
| ～まえに           | I write in my diary before going to bed.  | (18)       |
| ～とき            | When you borrow books from the library, you need a card.  | (23)       |
| <b>3.</b> から   | I don't go anywhere, because I don't have the time.   | (9)        |
| ですから           | Today is my wife's birthday. So I must go home early.   | (17)       |
| <b>4.</b> ～が   | 'The Seven Samurai' is an old but interesting movie.  | (8)        |
| でも             | The tour was fun. But I got tired.  | (12)       |
| ～けど            | This curry is hot but tasty.  | (20)       |
| しかし            | Dancing is good for the health, so I will practice it every day from tomorrow.<br>…But excessive practice is not good for one's health. | (19)       |
| <b>5.</b> じゃ   | This is an Italian wine.  |            |
|                | …Well, I'll buy it.   | (3)        |
| ～と             | Push this button, and change will come out.   | (23)       |
| ～たら            | If it rains, I will not go out. -   | (25)       |
| <b>6.</b> ～ても  | Even if it rains, I will go out.  | (25)       |

# APPENDICES

## I. Numerals

|    |             |               |          |
|----|-------------|---------------|----------|
| 0  | ゼロ、れい       | 100           | ひゃく      |
| 1  | いち          | 200           | にひゃく     |
| 2  | に           | 300           | さんびゃく    |
| 3  | さん          | 400           | よんひゃく    |
| 4  | よん、し        | 500           | ごひゃく     |
| 5  | ご           | 600           | ろっぴゃく    |
| 6  | ろく          | 700           | ななひゃく    |
| 7  | なな、しち       | 800           | はっぴゃく    |
| 8  | はち          | 900           | きゅうひゃく   |
| 9  | きゅう、く       |               |          |
| 10 | じゅう         | 1,000         | せん       |
| 11 | じゅういち       | 2,000         | にせん      |
| 12 | じゅうに        | 3,000         | さんせん     |
| 13 | じゅうさん       | 4,000         | よんせん     |
| 14 | じゅうよん、じゅうし  | 5,000         | ごせん      |
| 15 | じゅうご        | 6,000         | ろくせん     |
| 16 | じゅうろく       | 7,000         | ななせん     |
| 17 | じゅうなな、じゅうしち | 8,000         | はっせん     |
| 18 | じゅうはち       | 9,000         | きゅうせん    |
| 19 | じゅうきゅう、じゅうく |               |          |
| 20 | にじゅう        | 10,000        | いちまん     |
| 30 | さんじゅう       | 100,000       | じゅうまん    |
| 40 | よんじゅう       | 1,000,000     | ひゃくまん    |
| 50 | ごじゅう        | 10,000,000    | せんまん     |
| 60 | ろくじゅう       | 100,000,000   | いちおく     |
| 70 | ななじゅう、しちじゅう |               |          |
| 80 | はちじゅう       | 17.5          | じゅうななてんご |
| 90 | きゅうじゅう      | 0.83          | れいてんはちさん |
|    |             | $\frac{1}{2}$ | にぶんの いち  |
|    |             | $\frac{3}{4}$ | よんぶんの さん |

## II. Expressions of time

| day                              | morning                            | night                            |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| おととい<br>the day before yesterday | おとといのあさ<br>the morning before last | おとといのばん<br>the night before last |
| きのう<br>yesterday                 | きのうのあさ<br>yesterday morning        | きのうのばん<br>last night             |
| きょう<br>today                     | けさ<br>this morning                 | こんばん<br>tonight                  |
| あした<br>tomorrow                  | あしたのあさ<br>tomorrow morning         | あしたのばん<br>tomorrow night         |
| あさって<br>the day after tomorrow   | あさってのあさ<br>the morning after next  | あさってのばん<br>the night after next  |
| まいにち<br>every day                | まいあさ<br>every morning              | まいばん<br>every night              |

173

| week  | month                                       | year                         |
|---|---|------------------------------|
| せんせんしゅう<br>(にしゅうかんまえ)<br>the week before last | せんせんげつ<br>(にかげつまえ)<br>the month before last | おととし<br>the year before last |
| せんしゅう<br>last week                            | せんげつ<br>last month                          | きょねん<br>last year            |
| こんしゅう<br>this week                            | こんげつ<br>this month                          | ことし<br>this year             |
| らいしゅう<br>next week                            | らいげつ<br>next month                          | らいねん<br>next year            |
| さらいしゅう<br>the week after next                 | さらいげつ<br>the month after next               | さらいねん<br>the year after next |
| まいしゅう<br>every week                           | まいつき<br>every month                         | まいとし、まいねん<br>every year      |

## Telling time

| o'clock 一時 |        | minute 一分 |                     |
|------------|--------|-----------|---------------------|
| 1          | いちじ    | 1         | いっ、ぶん               |
| 2          | にじ     | 2         | に、ふん                |
| 3          | さんじ    | 3         | さん、ぶん               |
| 4          | よじ     | 4         | よん、ぶん               |
| 5          | ごじ     | 5         | ご、ふん                |
| 6          | ろくじ    | 6         | ろっ、ぶん               |
| 7          | しちじ    | 7         | なな、ふん、しち、ふん         |
| 8          | はちじ    | 8         | はつ、ぶん               |
| 9          | くじ     | 9         | きゅう、ふん              |
| 10         | じゅうじ   | 10        | じゅつ、ぶん、じつ、ぶん        |
| 11         | じゅういちじ | 15        | じゅうご、ふん             |
| 12         | じゅうにじ  | 30        | さんじゅつ、ぶん、さんじつ、ぶん、はん |
| ?          | なんじ    | ?         | なん、ぶん               |

## the days of the week

～曜日

にちようび Sunday

げつようび Monday

かようび Tuesday

すいようび Wednesday

もくようび Thursday

きんようび Friday

どようび Saturday

なんようび what day

## date

| month 一月 |         | day 一日 |           |
|----------|---------|--------|-----------|
| 1        | いちがつ    | 1      | ついたち      |
| 2        | にがつ     | 2      | ふつか       |
| 3        | さんがつ    | 3      | みつか       |
| 4        | しがつ     | 4      | よっか       |
| 5        | ごがつ     | 5      | いつか       |
| 6        | ろくがつ    | 6      | むいか       |
| 7        | しちがつ    | 7      | なのか       |
| 8        | はちがつ    | 8      | ようか       |
| 9        | くがつ     | 9      | ここのか      |
| 10       | じゅうがつ   | 10     | とおか       |
| 11       | じゅういちがつ | 11     | じゅういちにち   |
| 12       | じゅうにがつ  | 12     | じゅうににち    |
| ?        | なんがつ    | 13     | じゅうさんにち   |
|          |         | 14     | じゅうよっか    |
|          |         | 15     | じゅうごにち    |
|          |         | 16     | じゅうろくにち   |
|          |         | 17     | じゅうしちにち   |
|          |         | 18     | じゅうはちにち   |
|          |         | 19     | じゅうくにち    |
|          |         | 20     | はつか       |
|          |         | 21     | にじゅういちにち  |
|          |         | 22     | にじゅうににち   |
|          |         | 23     | にじゅうさんにち  |
|          |         | 24     | にじゅうよっか   |
|          |         | 25     | にじゅうごにち   |
|          |         | 26     | にじゅうろくにち  |
|          |         | 27     | にじゅうしちにち  |
|          |         | 28     | にじゅうはちにち  |
|          |         | 29     | にじゅうくにち   |
|          |         | 30     | さんじゅうにち   |
|          |         | 31     | さんじゅういちにち |
|          |         | ?      | なんにち      |

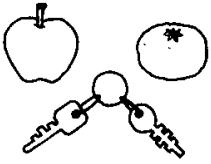
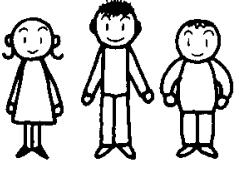
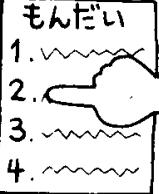
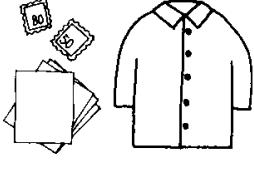
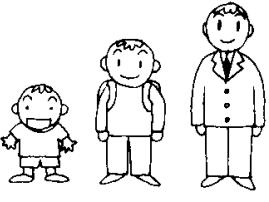
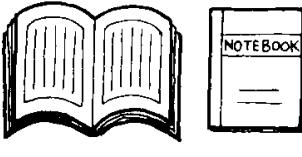
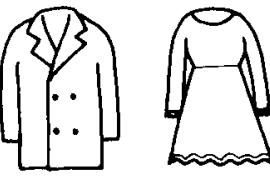
### III. Expressions of period

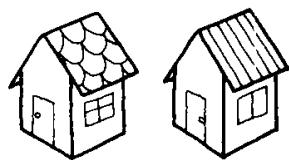
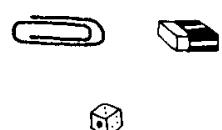
| time duration |             |            |  |
|---------------|-------------|------------|--|
|               | hour 一時間    | minute 一分  |  |
| 1             | いちじかん       | いっぺん       |  |
| 2             | にじかん        | にふん        |  |
| 3             | さんじかん       | さんふん       |  |
| 4             | よじかん        | よんふん       |  |
| 5             | ごじかん        | ごふん        |  |
| 6             | ろくじかん       | ろっぺん       |  |
| 7             | ななじかん、しちじかん | ななふん、しちふん  |  |
| 8             | はちじかん       | はっぺん       |  |
| 9             | くじかん        | きゅうふん      |  |
| 10            | じゅうじかん      | じゅっぺん、じっぺん |  |
| ?             | なんじかん       | なんふん       |  |

175

| period |        |                  |              |           |
|--------|--------|------------------|--------------|-----------|
|        | day 一日 | week 一週間         | month 一ヶ月    | year 一年   |
| 1      | いちにち   | いっしゅうかん          | いっかげつ        | いちねん      |
| 2      | ふつか    | にしゅうかん           | にかげつ         | にねん       |
| 3      | みつか    | さんしゅうかん          | さんかげつ        | さんねん      |
| 4      | よっか    | よんしゅうかん          | よんかげつ        | よねん       |
| 5      | いつか    | ごしゅうかん           | ごかげつ         | ごねん       |
| 6      | むいか    | ろくしゅうかん          | ろっかげつ、はんとし   | ろくねん      |
| 7      | なのか    | ななしゅうかん、しちしゅうかん  | ななかげつ、しちかげつ  | ななねん、しちねん |
| 8      | ようか    | はっしゅうかん          | はちかげつ、はっかげつ  | はちねん      |
| 9      | ここのか   | きゅうしゅうかん         | きゅうかげつ       | きゅうねん     |
| 10     | とおか    | じゅっしゅうかん、じっしゅうかん | じゅっかげつ、じっかげつ | じゅうねん     |
| ?      | なんにち   | なんしゅうかん          | なんかげつ        | なんねん      |

## IV. Counters

|    |    |    |    |    |
|----|---|---|--|---|
|    | things  | persons   | order  | thin & flat things  |
|    |   | -人  | -番   | -枚  |
| 1  | ひとつ   | ひとり   | いちばん   | いちまい  |
| 2  | ふたつ   | ふたり   | にばん  | にまい   |
| 3  | みっつ   | さんなん  | さんばん   | さんまい  |
| 4  | よっつ   | よんなん  | よんばん   | よんまい  |
| 5  | いつつ   | ごなん   | ごばん  | ごまい   |
| 6  | むっつ   | ろくなん  | ろくばん   | ろくまい  |
| 7  | ななつ   | なななん, しちなん  | ななばん   | ななまい  |
| 8  | やっつ   | はちなん  | はちばん   | はちまい  |
| 9  | ここのつ  | きゅうなん   | きゅうばん  | きゅうまい   |
| 10 | とお  | じゅうなん   | じゅうばん  | じゅうまい   |
| ?  | いくつ   | なんなん  | なんばん   | なんまい  |
|    |  |  |  |  |
|    | machines & vehicles   | age   | books & notebooks  | clothes   |
|    | -台  | -歳  | -冊   | -着  |
| 1  | いちだい  | いっさい  | いっさつ   | いっちゃん   |
| 2  | にだい   | にさい   | にさつ  | にちゃん  |
| 3  | さんだい  | さんさい  | さんさつ   | さんちゃん   |
| 4  | よんだい  | よんさい  | よんさつ   | よんちゃん   |
| 5  | ごだい   | ごさい   | ごさつ  | ごちゃん  |
| 6  | ろくだい  | ろくさい  | ろくさつ   | ろくちゃん   |
| 7  | ななだい  | ななさい  | ななさつ   | ななちゃん   |
| 8  | はちだい  | はっさい  | はっさつ   | はっちゃん   |
| 9  | きゅうだい   | きゅうさい   | きゅうさつ  | きゅうちゃん  |
| 10 | じゅうだい   | じゅっさい, じっさい   | じゅっさつ, じっさつ  | じゅっちゃん, じっちゃん   |
| ?  | なんだい  | なんさい  | なんさつ   | なんちゃん   |



frequency

small things

shoes & socks

houses

-回

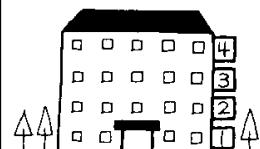
-個

-足

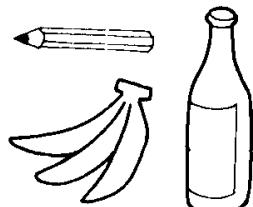
-軒

|    |            |          |            |            |
|----|------------|----------|------------|------------|
| 1  | いっかい       | いっこ      | いっそく       | いっけん       |
| 2  | にかい        | にこ       | にそく        | にけん        |
| 3  | さんかい       | さんこ      | さんぞく       | さんげん       |
| 4  | よんかい       | よんこ      | よんそく       | よんけん       |
| 5  | ごかい        | ごこ       | ごそく        | ごけん        |
| 6  | ろっかい       | ろっこ      | ろくそく       | ろっけん       |
| 7  | ななかい       | ななこ      | ななそく       | ななけん       |
| 8  | はっかい       | はっこ      | はっそく       | はっけん       |
| 9  | きゅうかい      | きゅうこ     | きゅうそく      | きゅうけん      |
| 10 | じゅっかい,じっかい | じゅっこ,じっこ | じゅっそく,じっそく | じゅっけん,じっけん |
| ?  | なんかい       | なんこ      | なんぞく       | なんげん       |

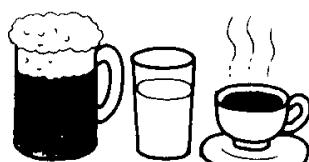
177



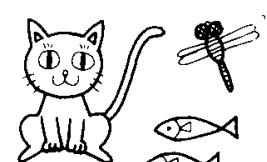
floors of a building



thin & long things



drinks & so on in cups & glasses



small animals, fish & insects

-階

-本

-杯

-匹

|    |            |            |            |            |
|----|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1  | いっかい       | いっぽん       | いっぱい       | いっぴき       |
| 2  | にかい        | にほん        | にはい        | にひき        |
| 3  | さんかい       | さんぽん       | さんぱい       | さんびき       |
| 4  | よんかい       | よんほん       | よんぱい       | よんひき       |
| 5  | ごかい        | ごほん        | ごぱい        | ごひき        |
| 6  | ろっかい       | ろっぽん       | ろっぱい       | ろっぴき       |
| 7  | ななかい       | ななほん       | ななぱい       | ななひき       |
| 8  | はっかい       | はっぽん       | はっぱい       | はっぴき       |
| 9  | きゅうかい      | きゅうほん      | きゅうぱい      | きゅうひき      |
| 10 | じゅっかい,じっかい | じゅっぽん,じっぽん | じゅっぱい,じっぱい | じゅっぴき,じっぴき |
| ?  | なんかい       | なんぼん       | なんぱい       | なんびき       |

## V. Conjugation of verbs

### I -group

|               | ます-form  | て-form | dictionary form |
|---------------|----------|--------|-----------------|
| 会います [ともだちに～] | あい ます    | あって    | あう              |
| 遊びます          | あそび ます   | あそんで   | あそぶ             |
| 洗います          | あらい ます   | あらって   | あらう             |
| あります          | あり ます    | あって    | ある              |
| あります          | あり ます    | あって    | ある              |
| あります [おまつりが～] | あり ます    | あって    | ある              |
| 歩きます [みちを～]   | あるき ます   | あるいて   | あるく             |
| 言います          | い い ます   | いって    | いう              |
| 行きます          | いき ます    | いって    | いく              |
| 急ぎます          | いそぎ ます   | いそいで   | いそぐ             |
| 要ります [ビザが～]   | いり ます    | いって    | いる              |
| 動きます [とけいが～]  | うごき ます   | うごいて   | うごく             |
| 歌います          | うたい ます   | うたって   | うたう             |
| 売ります          | うり ます    | うって    | うる              |
| 置きます          | おき ます    | おいて    | おく              |
| 送ります          | おくり ます   | おくって   | おくる             |
| 送ります [ひとを～]   | おくり ます   | おくって   | おくる             |
| 押します          | おし ます    | おして    | おす              |
| 思います          | おもい ます   | おもって   | おもう             |
| 思い出します        | おもいだし ます | おもいだして | おもいだす           |
| 泳ぎます          | およぎ ます   | およいで   | およぐ             |
| 終わります         | おわり ます   | おわって   | おわる             |
| 買います          | かい ます    | かって    | かう              |
| 返します          | かえし ます   | かえして   | かえす             |
| 帰ります          | かえり ます   | かえって   | かえる             |
| かかります         | かかり ます   | かかるて   | かかる             |
| 書きます          | かき ます    | かいて    | かく              |
| 貸します          | かし ます    | かして    | かす              |
| 勝ちます          | かち ます    | かって    | かつ              |
| かぶります [ぼうしを～] | かぶり ます   | かぶって   | かぶる             |

| ない-form |    | た-form | meaning                           | lesson |
|---------|----|--------|-----------------------------------|--------|
| あわ      | ない | あった    | meet [a friend]                   | 6      |
| あそば     | ない | あそんだ   | enjoy oneself, play               | 13     |
| あらわ     | ない | あらった   | wash                              | 18     |
| —       | ない | あった    | have                              | 9      |
| —       | ない | あった    | exist, be (inanimate things)      | 10     |
| —       | ない | あった    | [a festival] be held, take place  | 21     |
| あるか     | ない | あるいた   | walk [along a road]               | 23     |
| いわ      | ない | いった    | say                               | 21     |
| いか      | ない | いった    | go                                | 5      |
| いそが     | ない | いそいだ   | hurry                             | 14     |
| いら      | ない | いった    | need, require [a visa]            | 20     |
| うごか     | ない | うごいた   | [a watch] move, work              | 23     |
| うたわ     | ない | うたつた   | sing                              | 18     |
| うら      | ない | うつた    | sell                              | 15     |
| おか      | ない | おいた    | put                               | 15     |
| おくら     | ない | おくつた   | send                              | 7      |
| おくら     | ない | おくつた   | escort [someone], go with         | 24     |
| おさ      | ない | おした    | push, press                       | 16     |
| おもわ     | ない | おもつた   | think ↗                           | 21     |
| おもいださ   | ない | おもいだした | remember, recollect               | 15     |
| およが     | ない | およいだ   | swim                              | 13     |
| おわら     | ない | おわつた   | finish                            | 4      |
| かわ      | ない | かつた    | buy                               | 6      |
| かえさ     | ない | かえした   | give back, return                 | 17     |
| かえら     | ない | かえつた   | go home, return                   | 5      |
| かから     | ない | かかつた   | take (referring to time or money) | 11     |
| かか      | ない | かいた    | write, draw, paint                | 6      |
| かさ      | ない | かした    | lend                              | 7      |
| かた      | ない | かつた    | win                               | 21     |
| かぶら     | ない | かぶつた   | put on [a hat, etc.]              | 22     |

|               | ます-form | て-form | dictionary form |
|---------------|---------|--------|-----------------|
| 聞きます          | ききます    | きいて    | きく              |
| 聞きます [せんせいに～] | ききます    | きいて    | きく              |
| 切れます          | きります    | きって    | きる              |
| 消します          | けします    | けして    | けす              |
| 触ります [ドアに～]   | さわります   | さわって   | さわる             |
| 知ります          | しります    | しって    | しる              |
| 吸います [たばこを～]  | すいします   | すって    | すう              |
| 住みます          | すみます    | すんで    | すむ              |
| 座ります          | すわります   | すわって   | すわる             |
| 立ちます          | たちます    | たって    | たつ              |
| 出します [てがみを～]  | だします    | だして    | だす              |
| 出します          | だします    | だして    | だす              |
| 出します [レポートを～] | だします    | だして    | だす              |
| 使います          | つかいます   | つかって   | つかう             |
| 着きます [えきに～]   | つきます    | ついて    | つく              |
| 作ります、造ります     | つくります   | つくって   | つくる             |
| 連れて行きます       | つれていきます | つれていって | つれていいく          |
| 手伝います         | てつだいます  | てつだって  | てつだう            |
| 泊まります [ホテルに～] | とまります   | とまって   | とまる             |
| 取ります          | とります    | とって    | とる              |
| 撮ります [しゃしんを～] | とります    | とって    | とる              |
| 取ります [としを～]   | とります    | とって    | とる              |
| 直します          | なおします   | なおして   | なおす             |
| なくします         | なくします   | なくして   | なくす             |
| 習います          | ならいます   | ならって   | ならう             |
| なります          | なります    | なって    | なる              |
| 脱ぎます          | ぬぎます    | ぬいで    | ぬぐ              |
| 登ります [やまに～]   | のぼります   | のぼって   | のぼる             |
| 飲みます          | のみます    | のんで    | のむ              |
| 飲みます [くすりを～]  | のみます    | のんで    | のむ              |

| ない-form |    | た-form | meaning                         | lesson |
|---------|----|--------|---------------------------------|--------|
| きか      | ない | きいた    | hear, listen                    | 6      |
| きか      | ない | きいた    | ask [a teacher]                 | 23     |
| きら      | ない | きっと    | cut, slice                      | 7      |
| けさ      | ない | けした    | turn off                        | 14     |
| さわら     | ない | さわった   | touch [a door]                  | 23     |
| しら      | ない | しった    | get to know                     | 15     |
| すわ      | ない | すった    | smoke [a cigarette]             | 6      |
| すま      | ない | すんだ    | be going to live                | 15     |
| すわら     | ない | すわった   | sit down                        | 15     |
| たた      | ない | たった    | stand up                        | 15     |
| ださ      | ない | だした    | send [a letter]                 | 13     |
| ださ      | ない | だした    | take out, withdraw              | 16     |
| ださ      | ない | だした    | hand in [a report]              | 17     |
| つかわ     | ない | つかった   | use                             | 15     |
| つか      | ない | ついた    | arrive [at the station]         | 25     |
| つくら     | ない | つくった   | make, produce                   | 15     |
| つれていか   | ない | つれていった | take (someone)                  | 24     |
| てつだわ    | ない | てつだった  | help (with a task)              | 14     |
| とまら     | ない | とまつた   | stay [at a hotel]               | 19     |
| とら      | ない | とつた    | take, pass                      | 14     |
| とら      | ない | とつた    | take [a photograph]             | 6      |
| とら      | ない | とつた    | grow old                        | 25     |
| なおさ     | ない | なおした   | repair; correct                 | 20     |
| なくさ     | ない | なくした   | lose                            | 17     |
| ならわ     | ない | ならつた   | learn                           | 7      |
| なら      | ない | なつた    | become                          | 19     |
| ぬが      | ない | ぬいだ    | take off (clothes, shoes, etc.) | 17     |
| のぼら     | ない | のぼつた   | climb [a mountain]              | 19     |
| のま      | ない | のんだ    | drink                           | 6      |
| のま      | ない | のんだ    | take [medicine]                 | 17     |

|                | ます-form |  | て-form | dictionary form |
|----------------|---------|--|--------|-----------------|
| 乗ります [でんしゃに～]  | のります    |  | のって    | のる              |
| 入ります [きっとてんに～] | はいります   |  | はいって   | はいる             |
| 入ります [だいがくに～]  | はいります   |  | はいって   | はいる             |
| 入ります [おふろに～]   | はいります   |  | はいって   | はいる             |
| はきます [くつを～]    | はきます    |  | はいて    | はく              |
| 働きます           | はたらきます  |  | はたらないて | はたらく            |
| 弾きます           | ひきます    |  | ひいて    | ひく              |
| 引きます           | ひきます    |  | ひいて    | ひく              |
| 降ります [あめが～]    | ふります    |  | ふって    | ふる              |
| 払います           | はらいます   |  | はらって   | はらう             |
| 話します           | はなします   |  | はなして   | はなす             |
| 曲がります [みぎへ～]   | まがります   |  | まがって   | まがる             |
| 待ちます           | まちます    |  | まって    | まつ              |
| 回します           | まわします   |  | まわして   | まわす             |
| 持ちます           | もちます    |  | もって    | もつ              |
| 持って行きます        | もっていきます |  | もっていって | もっていく           |
| もらいます          | もらいます   |  | もらって   | もらう             |
| 役に立ちます         | やくにたちます |  | やくにたって | やくにたつ           |
| 休みます           | やすみます   |  | やすんで   | やすむ             |
| 休みます [かいしゃを～]  | やすみます   |  | やすんで   | やすむ             |
| 呼びます           | よびます    |  | よんで    | よぶ              |
| 読みます           | よみます    |  | よんで    | よむ              |
| わかります          | わかります   |  | わかつて   | わかる             |
| 渡ります [はしを～]    | わたります   |  | わたって   | わたる             |

| ない-form |    | た-form | meaning                                   | lesson |
|---------|----|--------|---|--------|
| のら      | ない | のった    | ride, get on [a train]                    | 16     |
| はいら     | ない | はいった   | enter [a coffee shop]                     | 13     |
| はいら     | ない | はいった   | enter [university]                        | 16     |
| はいら     | ない | はいった   | take [a bath]                             | 17     |
| はか      | ない | はいた    | put on [shoes, trousers, etc.]            | 22     |
| はたらか    | ない | はたらいた  | work                                      | 4      |
| ひか      | ない | ひいた    | play (stringed instrument or piano, etc.) | 18     |
| ひか      | ない | ひいた    | pull                                      | 23     |
| ふら      | ない | ふった    | rain                                      | 14     |
| はらわ     | ない | はらった   | pay                                       | 17     |
| はなさ     | ない | はなした   | speak, talk                               | 14     |
| まがら     | ない | まがった   | turn [to the right]                       | 14     |
| また      | ない | まつた    | wait                                      | 14     |
| まわさ     | ない | まわした   | turn                                      | 23     |
| もた      | ない | もつた    | hold                                      | 14     |
| もっていか   | ない | もっていった | take (something)                          | 17     |
| もらわ     | ない | もらった   | receive                                   | 7      |
| やくにたた   | ない | やくにたつた | be useful                                 | 21     |
| やすま     | ない | やすんだ   | take a rest, take a holiday               | 4      |
| やすま     | ない | やすんだ   | take a day off [work]                     | 11     |
| よば      | ない | よんだ    | call                                      | 14     |
| よま      | ない | よんだ    | read                                      | 6      |
| わから     | ない | わかつた   | understand                                | 9      |
| わたら     | ない | わたつた   | cross [a bridge]                          | 23     |

## II -group

|                | ます-form | て-form | dictionary form |
|----------------|---------|--------|-----------------|
| 開けます           | あけます    | あけて    | あける             |
| あげます           | あげます    | あげて    | あげる             |
| 集めます           | あつめます   | あつめて   | あつめる            |
| 浴びます [シャワーを～]  | あびます    | あびて    | あびる             |
| います            | います     | いて     | いる              |
| います [こどもが～]    | います     | いて     | いる              |
| います [にほんに～]    | います     | いて     | いる              |
| 入れます           | いれます    | いれて    | いれる             |
| いれます [コーヒーを～]  | いれます    | いれて    | いれる             |
| 生まれます          | うまれます   | うまれて   | うまれる            |
| 起きます           | おきます    | おきて    | おきる             |
| 教えます           | おしえます   | おしえて   | おしえる            |
| 教えます [じゅうしょを～] | おしえます   | おしえて   | おしえる            |
| 覚えます           | おぼえます   | おぼえて   | おぼえる            |
| 降ります [でんしゃを～]  | おります    | おりて    | おりる             |
| 換えます           | かえます    | かえて    | かえる             |
| 変えます           | かえます    | かえて    | かえる             |
| かけます [でんわを～]   | かけます    | かけて    | かける             |
| かけます [めがねを～]   | かけます    | かけて    | かける             |
| 借ります           | かります    | かりて    | かりる             |
| 考えます           | かんがえます  | かんがえて  | かんがえる           |
| 気をつけます [くるまに～] | きをつけます  | きをつけて  | きをつける           |
| 着ます [シャツを～]    | きます     | きて     | きる              |
| くれます           | くれます    | くれて    | くれる             |
| 閉めます           | しめます    | しめて    | しめる             |
| 調べます           | しらべます   | しらべて   | しらべる            |
| 捨てます           | すてます    | すべて    | する              |
| 食べます           | たべます    | たべて    | たべる             |
| 足ります           | たります    | たりて    | たりる             |
| 疲れます           | つかれます   | つかれて   | つかれる            |

| ない-form |    | た-form | meaning                            | lesson |
|---------|----|--------|------------------------------------|--------|
| あけ      | ない | あけた    | open                               | 14     |
| あげ      | ない | あげた    | give                               | 7      |
| あつめ     | ない | あつめた   | collect, gather                    | 18     |
| あび      | ない | あびた    | take [a shower]                    | 16     |
| い       | ない | いた     | exist, be (animate things)         | 10     |
| い       | ない | いた     | have [a child]                     | 11     |
| い       | ない | いた     | stay, be [in Japan]                | 11     |
| いれ      | ない | いれた    | put in, insert                     | 16     |
| いれ      | ない | いれた    | make [coffee]                      | 24     |
| うまれ     | ない | うまれた   | be born                            | 22     |
| おき      | ない | おきた    | get up, wake up                    | 4      |
| おしえ     | ない | おしえた   | teach                              | 7      |
| おしえ     | ない | おしえた   | tell [an address]                  | 14     |
| おぼえ     | ない | おぼえた   | memorize                           | 17     |
| おり      | ない | おりた    | get off [a train]                  | 16     |
| かえ      | ない | かえた    | exchange, change                   | 18     |
| かえ      | ない | かえた    | change                             | 23     |
| かけ      | ない | かけた    | make [a telephone call]            | 7      |
| かけ      | ない | かけた    | put on [glasses]                   | 22     |
| かり      | ない | かりた    | borrow                             | 7      |
| かんがえ    | ない | かんがえた  | think, consider                    | 25     |
| きをつけ    | ない | きをつけた  | pay attention [to cars], take care | 23     |
| き       | ない | きた     | put on [shirt, etc.]               | 22     |
| くれ      | ない | くれた    | give (me)                          | 24     |
| しめ      | ない | しめた    | close, shut                        | 14     |
| しらべ     | ない | しらべた   | check, investigate                 | 20     |
| すべて     | ない | すべてた   | throw away                         | 18     |
| たべ      | ない | たべた    | eat                                | 6      |
| たり      | ない | たりた    | be enough, be sufficient           | 21     |
| つかれ     | ない | つかれた   | get tired                          | 13     |

|               | ます-form | て-form | dictionary form |
|---------------|---------|--------|-----------------|
| つけます          | つけます    | つけて    | つける             |
| 出かけます         | でかけます   | でかけて   | でかける            |
| できます          | できます    | できて    | できる             |
| 出ます [きっとてんを～] | でます     | でて     | でる              |
| 出ます [だいがくを～]  | でます     | でて     | でる              |
| 出ます [おつりが～]   | でます     | でて     | でる              |
| 止めます          | とめます    | とめて    | とめる             |
| 寝ます           | ねます     | ねて     | ねる              |
| 乗り換えます        | のりかえます  | のりかえて  | のりかえる           |
| 始めます          | はじめます   | はじめて   | はじめる            |
| 負けます          | まけます    | まけて    | まける             |
| 見せます          | みせます    | みせて    | みせる             |
| 見ます           | みます     | みて     | みる              |
| 迎えます          | むかえます   | むかえて   | むかえる            |
| やめます [かいしゃを～] | やめます    | やめて    | やめる             |
| 忘れます          | わすれます   | わすれて   | わされる            |

| ない-form |    | た-form | meaning                                     | lesson |
|---------|----|--------|---|--------|
| つけ      | ない | つけた    | turn on                                     | 14     |
| でかけ     | ない | でかけた   | go out                                      | 17     |
| でき      | ない | できた    | be able to, can                             | 18     |
| で       | ない | でた     | go out [of a coffee shop]                   | 13     |
| で       | ない | でた     | graduate from [university]                  | 16     |
| で       | ない | でた     | [change] come out                           | 23     |
| とめ      | ない | とめた    | stop, park                                  | 14     |
| ね       | ない | ねた     | sleep, go to bed                            | 4      |
| のりかえ    | ない | のりかえた  | change (trains, etc.)                       | 16     |
| はじめ     | ない | はじめた   | start, begin                                | 14     |
| まけ      | ない | まけた    | lose, be beaten                             | 21     |
| みせ      | ない | みせた    | show  | 14     |
| み       | ない | みた     | see, look at, watch                         | 6      |
| むかえ     | ない | むかえた   | go to meet, welcome                         | 13     |
| やめ      | ない | やめた    | quit or retire from [a company],<br>give up | 16     |
| わすれ     | ない | わされた   | forget                                      | 17     |

### III—group

|                | ます-form       |    | て-form   | dictionary form |
|----------------|---------------|----|----------|-----------------|
| 案内します          | あんないし<br>ます   | ます | あんないして   | あんないする          |
| 運転します          | うんてんし<br>ます   | ます | うんてんして   | うんてんする          |
| 買い物します         | かいものし<br>ます   | ます | かいものして   | かいものする          |
| 来ます            | き<br>ます       | きて |          | くる              |
| 結婚します          | けっこんし<br>ます   | ます | けっこんして   | けっこんする          |
| 見学します          | けんがくし<br>ます   | ます | けんがくして   | けんがくする          |
| 研究します          | けんきゅうし<br>ます  | ます | けんきゅうして  | けんきゅうする         |
| コピーします         | コピーし<br>ます    | ます | コピーして    | コピーする           |
| 散歩します [こうえんを～] | さんぽし<br>ます    | ます | さんぽして    | さんぽする           |
| 残業します          | ざんぎょうし<br>ます  | ます | ざんぎょうして  | ざんぎょうする         |
| します            | し<br>ます       | して |          | する              |
| 修理します          | しゅうりし<br>ます   | ます | しゅうりして   | しゅうりする          |
| 出張します          | しゅっちょうし<br>ます | ます | しゅっちょうして | しゅっちょうする        |
| 紹介します          | しょうかいし<br>ます  | ます | しょうかいして  | しょうかいする         |
| 食事します          | しょくじし<br>ます   | ます | しょくじして   | しょくじする          |
| 心配します          | しんぱいし<br>ます   | ます | しんぱいして   | しんぱいする          |
| 説明します          | せつめいし<br>ます   | ます | せつめいして   | せつめいする          |
| 洗濯します          | せんたくし<br>ます   | ます | せんたくして   | せんたくする          |
| 掃除します          | そうじし<br>ます    | ます | そうじして    | そうじする           |
| 連れて来ます         | つれてき<br>ます    | ます | つれてきて    | つれてくる           |
| 電話します          | でんわし<br>ます    | ます | でんわして    | でんわする           |
| 引っ越しします        | ひっこし<br>します   | ます | ひっこしして   | ひっこしする          |
| 勉強します          | べんきょうし<br>ます  | ます | べんきょうして  | べんきょうする         |
| 持って来ます         | もってき<br>ます    | ます | もってきて    | もってくる           |
| 予約します          | よやくし<br>ます    | ます | よやくして    | よやくする           |
| 留学します          | りゅうがくし<br>ます  | ます | りゅうがくして  | りゅうがくする         |
| 練習します          | れんしゅうし<br>ます  | ます | れんしゅうして  | れんしゅうする         |

| ない-form |    | た-form   | meaning                    | lesson |
|---------|----|----------|----------------------------|--------|
| あんないし   | ない | あんないした   | show around, show the way  | 24     |
| うんてんし   | ない | うんてんした   | drive                      | 18     |
| かいものし   | ない | かいものした   | do shopping                | 13     |
| こ       | ない | きた       | come                       | 5      |
| けっこんし   | ない | けっこんした   | marry, get married         | 13     |
| けんがくし   | ない | けんがくした   | visit some place for study | 18     |
| けんきゅうし  | ない | けんきゅうした  | do research                | 15     |
| コピーし    | ない | コピーした    | copy                       | 14     |
| さんぽし    | ない | さんぽした    | take a walk [in a park]    | 13     |
| ざんぎょうし  | ない | ざんぎょうした  | work overtime              | 17     |
| し       | ない | した       | do                         | 6      |
| しゅうりし   | ない | しゅうりした   | repair                     | 20     |
| しゅつちょうし | ない | しゅつちょうした | go on a business trip      | 17     |
| しょうかいし  | ない | しょうかいした  | introduce                  | 24     |
| しょくじし   | ない | しょくじした   | have a meal, dine          | 13     |
| しんぱいし   | ない | しんぱいした   | worry                      | 17     |
| せつめいし   | ない | せつめいした   | explain                    | 24     |
| せんたくし   | ない | せんたくした   | wash (clothes)             | 19     |
| そうじし    | ない | そうじした    | clean (a room)             | 19     |
| つれてこ    | ない | つれてきた    | bring (someone)            | 24     |
| でんわし    | ない | でんわした    | phone*                     | 20     |
| ひっこし    | ない | ひっこしした   | move (house)               | 23     |
| べんきょうし  | ない | べんきょうした  | study                      | 4      |
| もってこ    | ない | もってきた    | bring (something)          | 17     |
| よやくし    | ない | よやくした    | reserve, book              | 18     |
| りゅうがくし  | ない | りゅうがくした  | study abroad               | 25     |
| れんしゅうし  | ない | れんしゅうした  | practice                   | 19     |

## Contributors

田中よね *Yone Tanaka*

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship  
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center  
Coordinator of Japanese Language Course

牧野昭子 *Akiko Makino*

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship  
The Japan Foundation Japanese-Language Institute, Kansai

重川明美 *Akemi Shigekawa*

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship  
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

御子神慶子 *Keiko Mikogami*

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship  
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

古賀千世子 *Chiseko Koga*

Kobe University International Students Center  
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., LTD. Overseas Training Center

石井千尋 *Chihiro Ishii*

YWCA Teachers' Association

## Editorial Advisors

石沢弘子 *Hiroko Ishizawa*

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

豊田宗周 *Munechika Toyoda*

The Association for Overseas Technical Scholarship

写真提供

©オリオンプレス

栃木県

姫路市

広島県

## Illustrator

田辺澄美 *Kiyomi Tanabe*

# みんなの日本語 初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版

1998年3月16日 初版第1刷発行

2000年4月7日 第4刷発行

編著者 株式会社 スリーエーネットワーク

発行者 小川 巖

発 行 株式会社 スリーエーネットワーク

〒101-0064 東京都千代田区猿楽町2-6-3 (松栄ビル)

電話 営業 03(3292)5751

編集 03(3292)6521

印 刷 日本印刷株式会社

不許複製

落丁・乱丁本はお取替えいたします。

ISBN4-88319-107-9 C0081

# スリーエーネットワークの日本語教材

価格はすべて税別

## ■『しんにほんごのきそ』シリーズ姉妹版 ■

|                           |        |
|---------------------------|--------|
| みんなの日本語 初級 I 本冊           | 2,500円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 英語版  | 2,000円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 韓国語版 | 2,000円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 I 翻訳・文法解説 中国語版 | 2,000円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 I カセットテープ(4巻)  | 6,000円 |

|                            |        |
|----------------------------|--------|
| みんなの日本語 初級 II 本冊           | 2,500円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 II 翻訳・文法解説 英語版  | 2,000円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 II 翻訳・文法解説 韓国語版 | 2,000円 |
| みんなの日本語 初級 II カセットテープ(4巻)  | 6,000円 |

スリーエーネットワーク 編著

## ■好評発売中 ■



|                             |        |
|-----------------------------|--------|
| 話そう 考えよう 初級日本事情 B5判 72頁     | 1,000円 |
| 話そう 考えよう 初級日本事情 教師用 B5判 55頁 | 800円   |

福岡日本語センター「日本事情」プロジェクト 著

●日本語力はまだまだ。でも「日本を知りたい！」そんな学習者のために。



|  |        |
|--|--------|
| はじめのいっぽ 英語版 B5判 208頁                   | 2,233円 |
| はじめのいっぽ ポルトガル語版 B5判 208頁               | 2,200円 |
| はじめのいっぽ スペイン語版 B5判 208頁                | 2,200円 |
| はじめのいっぽ カセットテープ 20分1巻                  | 952円   |
| 谷口すみ子・萬浪絵理・稻子あゆみ・萩原弘毅 著                |        |
| ●コミュニケーションを円滑に進めるテクニックがよくわかる日本語入門テキスト。 |        |



日本語初中級 理解から発話へ B5判 本文・語彙220頁 解答・留意点35頁 1,942円

日本語初中級 練習問題 B5判 本文80頁 解答12頁 1,000円

日本語初中級 カセットテープ 90分2巻 3,000円

名古屋YWCA教材作成グループ 著

●中級に進む前段階で日本語の基本的な構造を把握し、運用できる能力を養う。



ビジネスのための日本語 中級 B5判 190頁 2,500円

ビジネスのための日本語 カセットテープ 45分1巻 2,400円

米田隆介・藤井和子・重野美枝・池田広子 著

●ビジネスの現場ですぐに役立つ会話表現に焦点を当てたテキスト。

みんなの日本語

初級Ⅰ 翻訳・文法解説 英語版 English [I]

スコーネーネットワーク

# Minna no Nihongo